

CANCER  
MANAGEMENT  
WITH CHINESE  
MEDICINE

**Prevention and Complementary Treatments**

Revised Edition

YU RENCUN

Beijing Hospital of Traditional Chinese Medicine, China

HONG HAI

Nanyang Technological University, Singapore

**World Scientific**

*Published by*

World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

5 Toh Tuck Link, Singapore 596224

*USA office:* 27 Warren Street, Suite 401-402, Hackensack, NJ 07601

*UK office:* 57 Shelton Street, Covent Garden, London WC2H 9HE

**Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Names: Yu, Rencun, author. | Hong, Hai, 1943– author.

Title: Cancer management with Chinese medicine / by Hong Hai & Rencun Yu.

Description: Revised edition. | New Jersey : World Scientific, 2016. |

Author's names reversed on the first edition. | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2016045198 | ISBN 9789813203884 (hardcover : alk. paper)

Subjects: | MESH: Neoplasms--therapy | Medicine, Chinese Traditional--methods

Classification: LCC RC271.A62 | NLM QZ 266 | DDC 616.99/406--dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2016045198>

**British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data**

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

Copyright © 2018 by World Scientific Publishing Co. Pte. Ltd.

Printed in Singapore

# CONTENTS

About the Authors	ix
Preface to the Revised Edition	xi
Preface to the 1st Edition	xiii
1. Introduction	1
The TCM Approach to Cancer Management ( <i>Hong Hai</i> )	4
2. Principles of Diagnosis and Therapy in Traditional Chinese Medicine ( <i>Hong Hai</i> )	7
2.1. Origins of Chinese Medical Theory	9
2.2. The Establishment of Traditional Chinese Medicine	12
2.3. Core Concepts and Entities in TCM	16
2.4. Models for Analysis and Diagnosis of Illness	28
2.5. TCM as Science	42

3. Herbs and Prescriptions for Therapy ( <i>Hong Hai</i> )	45
3.1. Chinese <i>Materia Medica</i>	45
3.2. Preparation and Consumption of Herbs for Medicinal Use	47
3.3. Contraindications and Toxicities	48
3.4. Classification of Herbs	51
3.5. Chinese Medical Prescriptions	54
4. Cancer Prevention and Treatment Using TCM ( <i>Yu Rencun*</i> )	59
4.1. Avoidance of Factors Contributing to Higher Incidence of Cancers	60
4.2. Healthy Living for Cancer Prevention	63
4.3. Principles of Using TCM in Cancer Treatment	64
4.4. Combining Western Medical and TCM Treatments	72
4.5. Preserving Life or Eliminating the Illness?	74
5. Major Forms of Cancer and Case Studies (I) ( <i>Yu Rencun*</i> )	75
5.1. Lung Cancer	75
5.2. Breast Cancer	94
5.3. Liver Cancer	107
5.4. Colorectal Cancer	117
5.5. Stomach Cancer	127
6. Major Forms of Cancer (II) ( <i>Yu Rencun*</i> )	139
6.1. Prostate Cancer	139
6.2. Leukemia	149

6.3.	Pancreatic Cancer	153
6.4.	Lymphoma	156
7.	Diet, Exercise and Health Cultivation ( <i>Hong Hai &amp; Yu Rencun</i> )	171
7.1.	Nutrition in Cancer Prevention	171
7.2.	Nutritional Therapy for Cancer Patients	173
7.3.	TCM Perspectives of Appropriate Diets for Cancer Patients	175
7.4.	Dietary Restrictions	177
7.5.	Exercise and Life Cultivation	178
	References	183
	Appendix 1: Herbs Used in Cancer Therapy	185
	Appendix 2: Common Foods with Anti-Cancer Effects	229
	Index	245

# PREFACE TO THE REVISED EDITION

Following the favourable reception of the book after its publication in 2012, we have added coverage of four more common cancers, namely prostate cancer, lymphoma, leukemia, and pancreatic cancer, with selected case studies. Appendix I on Herbs for Cancer Therapy has been expanded.

We hope the book will continue to be useful to the general reader, patients and their caregivers, as well as medical professionals interested in complementing Western medical interventions with Chinese herbal treatments to strengthen the patient's immune system and resolve imbalances resulting from their illness as well as from surgery, radiation therapy and chemotherapy.

We would like to thank Ms Soh Shan Bin of the Renhai Clinic for helping with the translation of the new materials and updating the compilation of herbal information.

# PREFACE TO THE 1ST EDITION

Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) as a system of healing and health preservation has much to offer in the prevention and management of cancers. For patients who have contracted the ailment, TCM is generally not able to offer a complete cure although there have been claims and anecdotal evidence relating to successful treatments.

Playing a complementary role to Western medical treatments of cancer is where TCM can make, and has made, important contributions. Cancer patients usually exhibit clinical conditions that TCM recognize as internal disorders, such as poor flow of qi, blood stasis, deficiency of qi or blood, and internal heat. Treatments like surgery, chemotherapy and radiotherapy often leave the patient with severe side effects and in a weakened state. TCM treatments can help the patient manage these conditions by strengthening the immune system, facilitating flow, and eliminating toxins. This helps the patient in recovery or brings about a better quality of life.

This book offers the reader the benefit of Professor Yu's decades of experience combining TCM therapy with Western

treatments of cancer. It also provides advice on diet and living habits that help prevent cancer or assist in recovery.

For those unfamiliar with TCM theory, we have included introductory chapters on TCM principles and herbal medications.

We gratefully acknowledge the assistance of Dr Zhang Zhichen of the Beijing University of Chinese Medicine and TCM physicians Karen Wee and Doreen Low of Nanyang Technological University in the translation to English of parts of book.



# INTRODUCTION

Cancer is a complex family of diseases. In recent decades, rapid advances in the introduction of new drugs, surgical interventions and other therapeutic methods have been made by modern medicine in the treatment of cancers. Many early-stage cancers can now be cured and life can be prolonged for late-stage cancers with these new methods.

Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) does not in general offer treatment of cancers with a view to the complete elimination of disease. Rather, it directs itself to helping the body to strengthen and balance itself to give the patient the best chance of overcoming or living with the disease. After patients have undergone chemotherapy, radiotherapy and/or surgery, TCM can often help fortify the patient against the side effects of these therapies, or repair the immune system that has been affected by the toxicity of certain drugs used in chemotherapy. In some instances, with the consent of the Western oncologist treating the patient, TCM herbs can be used concurrently with chemotherapy and radiotherapy to help the patient cope with the side effects of those treatments.

Professor Yu Rencun was trained in Western medicine with specialization in oncology. Through his study of Chinese medicine and his clinical work, mostly at the Beijing Hospital of

Traditional Chinese Medicine where Western and Chinese methods are used together for a whole range of illnesses, he has gathered a wealth of experience using Chinese herbal medicine as a complementary treatment for patients who have undergone Western medical therapies.

In recent years he has spent a considerable amount of time treating patients in various parts of Asia, in particular Singapore which he visits regularly as a clinical consultant. He has written over 20 books on cancer and related subjects. This book, the first of his works to be written in English, captures the essence of the methods that he has used and documents a number of typical cases in which herbal medicine is used to manage cancer patients to improve their quality of life and, in some instances, to prolong their lives.

It is my privilege to have been acquainted with Professor Yu for over 20 years and observed many of the cases satisfactorily treated by him. I was therefore pleased that he asked me to collaborate with him in writing this book in English in order that his vast experience and deep insights into the role that TCM can play in cancer management be recorded for an English-speaking audience. This audience would include not only medical professionals but also patients and their relatives who can benefit from better understanding the conditions of the patients and appreciating how TCM could help in the management of these conditions.

The book would also be useful to the general reader who wishes to know how TCM works and how it can be applied to cultivating health and keeping his body in good condition to prevent this and other similar diseases.

Chapter 2 gives an outline of the concepts and principles in TCM. This is essential reading for those who are not trained in TCM or familiar with its main body of theory. The next chapter

introduces the reader to Chinese herbs and how they are combined for therapeutic and health promotion purposes.

Chapter 4 describes how TCM looks at cancer as a disease and the principles employed in therapy. It draws heavily on Professor Yu's scholarly writings. As it attempts to present the subject in a manner to which a Western-educated readership can more easily relate, this and subsequent chapters do not attempt a literal translation of any part or parts of Professor Yu's earlier works, and may not always conform to the standard terminology used in English translations of TCM textbooks. (It should be noted, though, that there is as yet no universally accepted standard terminology for translating TCM, this being a subject of continuing discussion and debate in academic and regulatory circles.)

Where I have occasionally taken the liberty to use more appropriate terms to help the reader understand the concepts, I make no apologies for doing so as our aim is to help the reader gain an understanding of the ideas and principles involved rather than to provide a reference text for medical professionals and students. For example, "dysphoria" is the technical term used to translate "*xinfan*" (心烦), "a sensation of stuffiness with heat in the chest and irritableness"<sup>1</sup> sometimes associated with stagnation of liver *qi*. I have in some contexts used the term "irritability" to translate "*xinfan*".

Chapter 5 deals with five major categories of cancer to illustrate the principles and methods employed and the results achieved. These cases are drawn from Professor Yu's medical files from the 1970s to 2006. These cases are but a few of a more comprehensive list cited in an earlier publication in Chinese.<sup>2</sup>

---

1 *Chinese-English Dictionary of Traditional Chinese Medicine*. (1996) Renmin Weisheng Publishing House, Beijing, p. 229.

2 Yu Rencun *et al.* (ed.) (2007) *Yu Rencun* 郁仁存, China Press of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Beijing.

The final chapter deals with the prevention of cancer and the management of diets and daily living habits for cancer patients. This is a useful chapter for the general reader who wishes to understand Chinese medicine for health cultivation and disease prevention. Chapters 2, 3 and 6 in combination can therefore be read in isolation from the rest of the book as a general introduction to TCM, health cultivation and the prevention of cancer.

## **The TCM Approach to Cancer Management**

The TCM management of cancer described in this book is holistic in the sense that, unlike Western medicine, it does not focus on the destruction or containment of cancer cells. It looks at the presence of a malignant tumour as the result of imbalances in the body's internal host environment that leads to abnormal cell growth. Its approach to management of the disease is therefore one of creating and regulating this internal environment to give the patient's own body the best chance of defending itself and/or co-existing with the cancer cells.

TCM oncologists like Professor Yu recognize and understand the power of Western drugs, radiotherapy and surgery in removing, destroying and containing tumours and cancer cells. They also believe in the judicious integration of Western and Chinese healing methods to give the patient the best of both worlds: one treats the disease; the other strengthens the host body to do battle with the disease by resolving internal imbalances known as TCM syndromes. If one may be allowed to use a somewhat invidious analogy, Western methods can be compared to the use of overwhelming force to attack the military bases of an occupying enemy, with accompanying collateral damage, destroying the homes and lives of innocent civilians. Chinese medical therapy, on the other hand, would be the equivalent of soft power used to

build up the resistance of local people to repel and contain foreign enemy forces. Working together, they can achieve a much better result than would be possible with each acting alone. The selected cases presented here from Professor Yu's medical files will help illustrate this principle.

*Hong Hai*  
December 2011

# PRINCIPLES OF DIAGNOSIS AND THERAPY IN TRADITIONAL CHINESE MEDICINE

Chinese medicine as practised today in China, some East Asian countries and the West is both an art and a science. To the extent that it has a scientific aspect to it, we can regard it as an empirically based form of healing that has progressed over the centuries by drawing on the accumulated clinical experience of successful physicians as well as — albeit to a lesser extent — modern scientific knowledge of anatomy and physiology.

Ancient Chinese medicine was formalized as a system of thought and practice after the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949. "Traditional Chinese medicine" (TCM) is the common term for the modernized form of Chinese medicine.

TCM is described as "traditional" to indicate that it is derived from ancient medicine. It retains many of the core concepts and theories of ancient medicine and is based on a body of theory distinct from that of Western medicine practised in Chinese hospitals and clinics today. TCM is taught through medical degree courses in Chinese universities as well as tertiary institutions in East Asia, Australia, Europe and North America. In most of these

countries, these courses are prerequisites for registration as licensed TCM practitioners by health authorities. Although Western medicine is dominant and is the mainstream form of medicine practised in these countries, TCM plays a significant and recognized role in national healthcare in China (including Hong Kong and Taiwan), Japan, Korea, Malaysia and Singapore, and has a sizeable and growing following in many Western countries.<sup>1</sup>

TCM should also be distinguished from Chinese folk medicine handed down largely by word of mouth and practised unregulated (strictly speaking, illegitimately) in China and some other Asian countries. Such folk medicine may have arcane practices like blood-letting, divination and the use of unusual drugs and animal parts not listed in the Chinese pharmacopoeia. The concepts and principles discussed in this book are not concerned with Chinese folk medicine.

It should be noted that the selective use of *materia medica* (herbs) and herbal formulations by Western doctors as complementary treatments for disease is not part of TCM. By way of analogy, when Western doctors use quinine for the treatment of malaria they are not practising Indian medicine, even though the drug was originally extracted from a South American tree used by native Indians to treat fever. Likewise, extracts of the ginkgo leaf used by German scientists to manufacture ginkgo biloba, which is claimed to promote blood circulation, is not Chinese medicine, even though the ginkgo nut is a common ingredient of standard Chinese medications. Most clinical trials on Chinese herbs have been done with a view to discovering new drugs for Western medicine. The use of such drugs and information

---

<sup>1</sup> Korean medicine is practised as a slight variation of TCM. Many Korean physicians receive postgraduate training at Chinese universities.

derived from clinical trials do not directly pertain to the theory and treatment methodologies of TCM, although they may contain useful information for the latter. For the same reason, the selective borrowing of acupuncture techniques by Western doctors to relieve pain does not amount to the practice of TCM.

To understand TCM better, it is useful to review briefly its history. For readers who want to skip this, please go directly to Section 2.3.

## 2.1. Origins of Chinese Medical Theory

Many of the concepts in TCM today can be found in ancient cosmology and metaphysics. The basic theory of ancient Chinese medicine was derived partly from ancient cosmological models, albeit modified and reinterpreted over many centuries in the light of empirical experience. The literature of the history of medicine in China provides insights into how Chinese medical thought has evolved from ancient times and holds useful clues to understanding the epistemology of its theory.

Ancient Chinese medicine, like the ancient Greco-Roman medicine of Hippocrates and Galen, dates back several thousand years. The concepts of *yin* and *yang*, which are central to Chinese medical theory, go back to the *I-Ching* (*The Book of Changes*) written early in the Zhou dynasty (1046–256 BC) and to Taoism whose founder was Lao Tzu (circa 600 BC). The concept of *qi* (气) appeared originally in ancient Chinese cosmology as a formless substance that pervaded the universe at the beginning of time. *Qi* materialized into all the elements that made up the cosmos and also was the source of all energy and change. This pervasive and ubiquitous nature of *qi* later found its way into medicine. However, within the medical literature, it had a more restricted meaning, though still wide enough that one scholar



has estimated that in the medical classic *Huangdi neijing* alone there are some 1700 mentions of *qi* with varying shades of meaning.<sup>2</sup>

Other entities like *jing* 精 (essence), wind, dampness and heat similarly have multiple meanings depending on the context. They are therefore troublesome to grapple with for a Western medical scientist trying to understand the theory and concepts of TCM.

The first comprehensive manual of Chinese medical theory was the *Huangdi Neijing* (*The Inner Canon of the Yellow Emperor*) compiled by various authors during the Han dynasty (206 BC to AD 220). The *Neijing* was arguably the first medical manual that treated medicine as an empirical science. Before the *Neijing*, Chinese medicine was dominated by the belief that illness was caused by spirits and demons and required the intervention of witches and mediums to effect cures. Ancient Greek and Roman temple medicine was also dominated by similar beliefs, treating the sick by having mythological gods intervene in their dreams. The *Neijing* made a break with this tradition by refusing to attribute disease causation to numinous agents, focusing instead on environmental conditions and emotional factors as the causes of illness and on natural laws in their explanation.<sup>3</sup> It established the idea of systematic correspondence by which all tangible and abstract phenomena could be categorized as manifestations of certain cosmological models, the main ones being the *yin-yang* principle and the five-phase model.

The *Neijing*'s principal breakthrough insight was to base medicine on common sense and empirical observation. It postulates that there is a normal healthy state of the body that

---

<sup>2</sup>Wang (2001), p. 44.

<sup>3</sup>Unschuld (2003), p. 319.

manifests in observable signs in a healthy person — the complexion of his face, the spirited look in his eyes, the colour of his tongue and the kind of fur (coating) that sits on it, the tone and strength of his pulse, his bowel movements, his appetite, sleep habits, tolerance of heat and cold, and so on. Deviations from this normal healthy state point to imbalances in the body, and the role of the physician is to identify the nature of these imbalances and apply therapeutic techniques to rebalance the body. When imbalance occurs, herbs and acupuncture are used in accordance with the basic principles of *yin-yang* and the five elements to nudge the body in the direction of balance. In effect, Chinese therapeutic methods aim fundamentally to help the body heal itself.

Different schools of thought built around the basic tenets of the *Neijing* flourished from the Han dynasty to modern times, but they shared the core concepts and principles contained in the *Neijing*. *The Treatise on Febrile Diseases* (*Shanghan Lun* 伤寒论) by the legendary late-Han physician Zhang Zhongjing (150–219) postulated that harm caused by climatic influences such as cold and dampness travelled along (acupuncture) meridians and brought about progressive stages of pathogenesis. The Song dynasty (960–1279) saw the emergence of Neo-Confucianism, which in turn stimulated the development of new medical doctrines. The late Song and the ensuing Jin-Yuan dynasties saw vigorous contention among “a hundred schools” of medical thought. Among the influential schools were the Cold Damage School (*hanliang pai* 寒凉派), founded by *Liu Wansu* (1120–1200), which stressed cooling the body to overcome the tendency towards excess heat; the Stomach-Spleen School (*piwei pai* 脾胃派) of *Li Dongyuan* (1180–1251), who regarded the digestive system as the fundamental basis for good health; and the *Yin-Nourishing* School (*ziyin pai* 滋阴派) of *Zhu Danxi* (1281–1358), who emphasized nourishing the *yin* of the body as

the basis for good health. The late Ming and early Qing saw further development of medical thought, notably studies of infectious diseases common in spring and summer in the south by the Warm Disorders School (*wenbing xuepai* 温病学派) led by Wu Youxing (1582–1652).

Although these contending schools were fundamentally based on the *Neijing*, they were also in tune with their times and the climate and social condition of the regions in which they flourished. For example, the Stomach-Spleen School was developed in the declining years of the Song dynasty when times were uncertain and people's lives were filled with sustained anxiety (*si* 思). Such anxiety, in TCM theory, leads to damage of the functions of the spleen and stomach. Likewise, during the era of Zhu Danxi, many wealthy merchants and members of the aristocracy often ate rich food excessively. Many led dissolute lives of indulgence in wine and women, leading to injury of the *yin* of the kidney and liver. The correct therapeutic approach then was to nourish the *yin* (滋阴).

## 2.2. The Establishment of Traditional Chinese Medicine

In the final decades of the Qing dynasty (1644–1911), foreign powers annexed territories and extracted war indemnities. Following the founding of the Chinese Republic in 1912, the May 4th Movement of 1919 marked a historic turning point when the country adopted Western science and technology as the only practical way of strengthening itself.<sup>4</sup> From the 1920s, as young scholars returned from studies abroad with the mission to modernize science in China, Chinese medicine came under attack for being unscientific. In 1929 a Japanese-educated Western doctor

---

<sup>4</sup>Schwartz (1986).

Yu Yan in the government health administration called for the abolition of Chinese medicine. This met with a robust response from Chinese physician and scholar Yun Tiejiao.<sup>5</sup> In the ensuing national debate, Western-trained scientists followed a line of thinking inspired by logical positivists whose ideas were gaining currency in Europe. They deemed unobservables like *qi* in Chinese medicine as metaphysical, hence meaningless, and Chinese medical theory to be unverifiable (or unfalsifiable), hence unscientific. Logical positivism has since gone out of fashion among philosophers of science, but its influence on the thinking of scientists continued for generations of scientists. Even today, one often comes across young scientists and doctors who believe only in the existence of what can be observed directly or through scientific instruments, and only in theories that can be expressed directly or indirectly by mathematical formulations.

Chinese physicians defended their profession by citing its successful clinical record and by appealing to the wisdom of ancient Chinese philosophy that explained medical theory. The first defence was difficult for Western doctors to deny, as there was a great deal of *prima facie* evidence for the efficacy of many Chinese medications and of acupuncture. Instead they insisted that this evidence be further subjected to rigorous clinical trials. However, the second defence, invoking the wisdom of an ancient philosophical system, convinced few detractors.

The debate was interrupted by civil war (1935–1949) that culminated in the ascendancy of Mao and the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949. Early in his rule, Mao, a self-styled philosopher-king who believed deeply in ancient wisdom while recognizing the power of Western technology, directed that

---

<sup>5</sup>Ou (2005) and Lei (1999).

the country preserve the “treasure trove” of Chinese medicine and modernize it by absorbing relevant knowledge from Western science and medicine.<sup>6</sup>

Paradoxically, this modernized, state-sanctioned form of Chinese medicine henceforth became known as traditional Chinese medicine. Traditional only in sharing common concepts and models with the ancient Chinese medical classics, it was in fact viewed as a reformed system that reflected the social and political milieu of modern China.<sup>7</sup> Following Mao’s edict to modernize TCM, textbooks were written in plain Chinese prose (*baihua*) as distinct from terse formal classical Chinese, systematically laying out the principles of TCM for the training of a new generation of Chinese doctors. This was in contrast to the old way of medical apprentices memorizing the classics and learning practice at the feet of experienced practitioners. The new texts were written by hand-picked leading scholars, mostly from new TCM colleges set up in Beijing, Chengdu, Guangzhou, Nanjing and Shanghai.

The first national TCM textbook appeared in 1958, titled *Outline of Chinese Medicine* (*Zhongyixue gailun* 中医学概论).<sup>8</sup> It was superseded by other specialized texts covering foundational theory, diagnostics, acupuncture and moxibustion, *materia medica*, prescriptions, internal medicine, paediatrics, gynaecology, skin diseases and so forth. The structural similarity of these textbooks to their Western medical counterparts was obvious and deliberate. The textbooks constituted a massive systematization of medical theory and practice, the first to take place in Chinese history.

---

<sup>6</sup>Taylor (2005).

<sup>7</sup>Farquhar (1994) and Scheid (2002).

<sup>8</sup>The 1972 text *A Revised Outline of Chinese Medicine* (新编中医学概要) was translated by Sivin (1987).

Regulation of TCM practice is by licensing of medical practitioners at the state level with common national examinations. Prescribed textbooks currently comprise a series published by Shanghai Science and Technology Press, which have also been adopted in Hong Kong and Singapore. Chinese medicine as practised in Taiwan and Malaysia follows a similar pattern, as does Korean medicine, which is basically an indigenized version of Chinese medicine.

TCM colleges in China require about 40% of the student's time to be spent on studying Western medicine. Graduates can practise basic Western medicine in addition to TCM. They are trained to read modern diagnostic test results, prescribe Western drugs and perform simple surgical procedures. Postgraduate students and researchers in Chinese medical colleges publish extensively in academic journals. While the rigour of research has yet to catch up with that of leading Western academic institutions, the existence of these postgraduate research programmes and publications indicate a decisive shift away from the unconditional acceptance of ancient philosophy to evidence-based medicine.

As Sivin notes, these changes were due to “unmistakable influence from modern medicine,” whilst Scheid observes that the transition was not without its controversies and contends that despite the apparent uniformity forced upon the TCM community by state-sanctioned textbooks and clinical practices, there remains a plurality of views among scholars and practitioners.<sup>9</sup> Scheid's observation is especially pertinent considering influential conservative scholars like Liu Lihong who, despite having undergone training in systematized TCM, regard the ancient classics as the source of ultimate authority in medicine, and view modern

---

<sup>9</sup> Sivin (1987), p. 124; and Scheid (2002).

systematized TCM as Chinese medicine adulterated and distorted by Western influence.

The core principle of syndrome differentiation (see Section 2.4.3) and choosing the appropriate therapeutic method accordingly (*bianzheng lunzhi* 辨证论治) was given formal emphasis and became the core of Chinese medical practice.<sup>10</sup> TCM distinguished itself from Western medicine, with its emphasis on diseases and their causes, by focusing on *syndromes* (*zheng* 证) based on imbalances in the body and on methods of resolving them to restore health. (TCM syndromes and the principal TCM models are discussed further along in this chapter.)

### 2.3. Core Concepts and Entities in TCM

The core theory and concepts in TCM were developed at a time when very little was understood about human anatomy and physiology. Unlike Greece and Rome in antiquity, ancient China forbade dissections because the human body was considered sacred. Ancient Chinese descriptions of the human body organs and substances contained therein were therefore extremely simple and conjectural and the theory built on these entities and their functions was likewise highly simplistic compared to those of modern physiology and pathology. Yet a system of medicine was developed that provided the mainstay of healing for thousands of years, and was only partially supplanted by Western medicine as mainstream medicine in China in the middle of the 20th century.

As most TCM entities are unobservable and the theory based on them largely untested by clinical trials, the familiar epistemological questions in the philosophy of science naturally arise: Do

---

<sup>10</sup>Scheid (2002), pp. 106–115.

they really exist as we imagine them to be? What is the validity of theory based upon such entities and forming the basis of a healing system that has endured in scientifically developed societies like China, Japan and Korea?

The ancient Chinese picture of the human body is well documented in textbooks in Chinese as well as Western commentary.<sup>11</sup> It is important to understand from the outset that this picture is an abstraction of anatomical and physiological realities, that although terms like “blood” and “liver” are used to refer to what resemble the same entities in modern medicine, they in fact amounted to an attempt to incorporate all the essential functions of the body within a simple framework of a few fluids, organs and communication channels (meridians). By giving multiple complex functions to these basic entities, Chinese medicine built up models for the diagnosis and treatment of illnesses that appear to have served well as a system of healing from ancient times, although by modern standards it is clearly inadequate and can at best serve only as alternative or complementary medicine to modern Western medicine. With these limitations in mind, let us take a brief look at the simplified picture of the human body provided by TCM.

In the TCM model the human body comprises the following:

- *qi* (气), blood (*xue* 血) and clear body fluids (*jinye* 津液);
- meridians (channels) and branches (collaterals) (*jingluo* 经络) that serve as transport channels for *qi* and are connected to the organs;

---

<sup>11</sup> Among Western works, Kuriyama’s much-cited *The Expressiveness of the Body* (1999) provides a largely historical account of the Chinese picture of the human body, with valuable insights into the evolution of key concepts and comparisons with pictures of the human body in Greco-Roman antiquity.



- solid (*zang*) and hollow (*fu*) organs (脏腑);
- the brain and marrow; the uterus (for females);
- muscles, skin and bones;
- the mind (*shen* 神), which has a close relationship with the body.

Different emotions are associated with the mind, each of which has a specific relationship to a particular organ (see a later section in this chapter).

### 2.3.1. The body's three essential substances: *qi*, blood and *jinye*

#### 2.3.1.1. *Qi*

“*Qi*” is a word that is used extensively in the Chinese language, and can be used to refer to the profound and mysterious substance that pervaded the universe at the beginning of time in Chinese cosmology, the vagaries of the weather (*qixiang* 气象), the physical bearing of a person (*qise* 气色) or losing one's temper (*shengqi* 生气), among others.

In TCM theory, *qi* has a number of specific medical meanings depending on the context in which the term is used. In general, when we talk about *qi* in TCM, we have in mind a certain physiological function inside the body, or a substance that has a particular function. In other words, *qi* sometimes refers to a substance, and other times to a physiological function. TCM theory does not deal with the question of transferring *qi* from one person to another. Some practitioners of *qigong* healing and Chinese martial arts are believed to be able to transfer some kind of life force (also termed “*qi*”) to other people for tonic and healing purposes. Conventional TCM theory is silent on this matter.

Whatever gets transferred in *qigong* healing may not necessarily be the same *qi* that TCM theory deals with.

A comprehensive discourse on the nature and functions of *qi* would take a whole scholarly volume by itself. For the purpose of this book, we look at three major categories of *qi* in TCM theory:

1. *Qi* as a substance that is vital to life. It can be transported through the meridians to the body's organs, some of which are able to store it like a chemical fuel.
2. *Qi* as energy. Lay expositions of Chinese medicine that translate *qi* as "vital energy" largely have this meaning in mind. This energy drives the function of our vital organs, propels blood and helps move and transform food in the body's digestive process. Acupuncture can be used to stimulate the flow of this vital energy.
3. *Qi* as a kind of physiological capability in the body. There are a multitude of such capabilities, such as the ability of the body to defend against harmful climatic influences like cold and wind, the ability to fight off invasions of external pathogens, the ability of the lung to breathe and project voice, and the ability of the body to contain or hold back excessive sweating, prolapse leading to hernias, and leakage of fluid from blood vessels.

According to Chinese medical theory, we are all born with a certain amount of *qi* from our parents, stored in the kidney at birth. Healthy parents and good care and nutrition for the mother during pregnancy ensure more abundant *qi* stored in the child's kidney at birth. After birth, the child acquires more *qi* from food, air and exercise, and this is stored in the various organs in the body.

Among the daily physiological functions of *qi* are the following:

- The propelling function that drives blood, enables fluid passage within the body, and is the moving force behind digestion.
- The warming function, as *qi* is a source of heat for the body, carrying nourishment with it for body tissues, which explains why an inadequate level of *qi* can lead to cold hands and feet.
- The protective function, with circulating *qi* at the surface level of the body acting like protective armour against the invasion of external pathogens such as wind and cold.
- The fixating or consolidating (固摄) function, where *qi* keeps fluids within blood vessels and tissues; it prevents excessive loss of fluids by sweating and loss of blood through oozing out of blood vessels.
- The transforming function, with *qi* converting food into a kind of essence (气化), transforming one kind of fluid into another, as well as helping with the excretion of waste substances.
- The transmitting function, where *qi* carries emotional signals from the mind to an associated organ, such as anger being transmitted to the liver. (This relationship between emotions and internal organs is very important in TCM theory and will be discussed further.)

The term “**zheng qi**” (正气) is associated with the vital functions of protecting the body against external pathogens that cause disease as well as the ability of the body to recover from illness; hence, it has commonality with the Western medical concept of the body’s immune system, but with much wider application. It is variously translated as “genuine *qi*”, “vital *qi*” and “**healthy *qi***”. The *Neijing* aphorism “*zheng qi cun nei , xie bu ke*

*gan*” (正气存内，邪不可干) means that if there is sufficient healthy *qi* in the body, it will not succumb to external pathogens.

Whilst “*zheng qi*” is a general term used to characterize a healthy body, there are various classifications of *qi* in the Chinese medical literature to describe more specific capabilities. Apart from *qi* associated with the proper functioning of each internal organ, there are four principal kinds of *qi* that are associated with the normal functioning of the body:

- **Primordial *qi*** or *yuan qi* (元气): This is inherited from parents and stored in the kidney; it is supplemented with air, nourishment and exercise and is an important reservoir of *qi* in the human body. In situations of extreme stress and damage to the body through illness, *yuan qi* is depleted; its restoration then becomes an important step to health recovery.
- **Pectoral *qi*** or *zong qi* (宗气): This is the *qi* stored in the thoracic area. It warms the vessels and nourishes the lung; an abundance of it gives a person a sonorous voice that is good for public speaking and singing.
- **Nutrient *qi*** or *ying qi* (营气): This circulates in the body and nourishes the internal organs.
- **Defensive *qi*** or *wei qi* (卫气): This *qi* moves in the outer layer of the body and defends it against external pathogens. When the body’s defensive *qi* is weak, it is more vulnerable to harmful forces like cold, wind, dampness and heat. Defensive *qi* also helps regulate sweat to maintain body temperature.

#### 2.3.1.2. Blood

Blood in TCM is similar to that in Western medicine but has a somewhat wider meaning. It is closely related to *qi*. In TCM, blood is produced by essence (*jing* 精) in the kidney and essence

derived from food nutrients; *qi* participates in the transformation of essence into blood.

The functions of blood in TCM theory are to nourish and moisten the body. Since blood contains nutrient *qi*, it can nourish all the organs in the body. The fluid in blood moistens the vital organs as well as the orifices and joints. Blood also transports turbid *qi* to the lung where it is excreted by respiration.

Blood flow in the body is propelled by the *qi* of the heart. If the heart *qi* is inadequate, the blood will become too weak to circulate and this can have an impact on the working of the mind by causing conditions like insomnia. Other internal organs like the lung, spleen and liver are also involved in the circulation of blood. The lung is thought to be connected to all vessels of the body (hence the aphorism “the lung faces all vessels 肺朝百脉”); it accumulates *qi* and blood from the whole body to assist the heart to propel blood circulation. The spleen “commands” blood, directing it to circulate normally and preventing it from flowing out of the blood vessels. The liver stores blood and regulates the volume of blood, smoothing the activity of *qi* to promote blood circulation.

Factors that can affect blood circulation are the state of the vessels and changes in temperature. Phlegm, dampness, blood stasis, swellings and nodules can also obstruct blood circulation.

Blood and *qi* are so closely related that they are almost like two sides of the same coin. TCM theory puts it this way: “Blood is the mother of *qi* and *qi* is the marshall of blood” (血为气之母, 气为血之帅). Blood carries *qi* and is also essential to the production of *qi* by providing nutrients to the vital organs and the meridians. *Qi* is the driving force that enables blood circulation; as we noted earlier, *qi* also plays a role in the production of blood.

### 2.3.1.3. *Body fluids*

Body fluids (*jinye* 津液) help maintain life activities in the body. The main component of body fluids is water, which contains nutrient substances and is a component of blood in the blood vessels. Body fluids also flow outside the vessels in the vital organs and in the rest of the body. They can be excreted as tears, nasal discharges, tears and saliva. Among the functions of body fluids are moistening and nourishing, and the transportation of turbid *qi* for excretion.

### 2.3.2. **Channels and collaterals**

Channels (meridians) and collaterals (*jingluo* 经络) are the pathways along which travel *qi*, nutrients and messages linking the mind to the various organs. Channels are the main trunks while collaterals are the branches. Together they form an important network for the proper functioning of the body. Acupuncture needles are used at specific points (*xuewei* 穴位) in this network, promoting the flow of *qi* to relieve blockages to stimulate particular organs.

The principal components of the network are the twelve channels and eight extraordinary vessels (*qijing bamai* 奇经八脉). Each channel is associated with a particular organ, while the extraordinary vessels have no direct connection to the organs. Of the eight extraordinary vessels, the most commonly used ones for acupuncture are the governor vessel (*dumai* 督脉), the conception vessel (*renmai* 任脉) and the thoroughfare vessel (*chongmai* 冲脉).

The relevance of the channels and collateral network to cancer therapy lies in the association of these channels to particular organs, or to specific functions and parts of the body. For example, acupuncture needles applied to the spleen and stomach

channels can have a tonifying effect on these organs. Cancer patients often suffer from deficiency of *qi* in the spleen and stomach, and acupuncture can be used together with herbal medications to strengthen these organs.

### 2.3.3. The organ systems

In accordance with the Chinese medical classification, the body's organs are divided into five solid storage organs known as *zang* 脏 and six hollow organs known as *fu* 腑. They are paired up as shown in Table 2.1.

The *zang* organs are regarded as solid as they have storage functions, including the storage of *qi* and essence. The *fu* organs are hollow in the sense that substances pass through them, as in the case of food passing through the stomach and the intestines. They are paired in the sense that they usually act in concert and support one another. For example, the spleen and stomach are both involved in digestion, and are often referred to together as *piwei* 脾胃; likewise, the kidney and bladder act together, one processing and the other holding urine before it is excreted. A sixth *fu* organ, not listed, is known as *sanjiao* 三焦 or the “triple

Table 2.1. Pairing of *Zang* and *Fu* Organs.

Zang	Fu
Liver ( <i>gan</i> 肝)	Gallbladder ( <i>dan</i> 胆)
Heart ( <i>xin</i> 心)	Small intestine ( <i>xiaochang</i> 小肠)
Spleen ( <i>pi</i> 脾)	Stomach ( <i>wei</i> 胃)
Lung ( <i>fei</i> 肺)	Large intestine ( <i>dachang</i> 大肠)
Kidney ( <i>shen</i> 肾)	Bladder ( <i>pangguang</i> 膀胱)

energizer”, which is essentially the trunk of the body from thorax to abdomen divided into three sections. It does not pair with any of the *zang* organs.

It is important to understand that organs in TCM are *not* the same as the organs with the same names in Western anatomy. *Each organ in TCM represents a set of functions.* In Western anatomy, an organ refers to a physical entity that can be identified at a fixed position in the body. A TCM organ, on the other hand, is physically less well defined. It is the traditional Chinese medical way of clustering a set of physiological functions so that all the main functions of the body can be captured by the five *zang* and six *fu* organs. Put in a different way, an organ in TCM is really a set of functions clustered in such a way to fit TCM models of health and physiology. This often causes considerable confusion to readers of Chinese medical literature who have not been exposed to the theory and models of TCM. We describe briefly the main functions of the five *zang* organs as employed in TCM theory.

The kidney (*shen*) has functions far beyond those of excretion. It is involved in growth, development, sex and reproduction, keeping the body warm, the production of bone marrow and brain matter, and the maintenance of the body’s immune system. Hence, when a TCM physician speaks of a weak kidney, he is not necessarily referring to the person’s problem with urination, but quite possibly to such unrelated problems as low libido or inability to withstand cold.

The spleen or *pi* in TCM represents, among other things, a set of digestive functions such that the whole digestive process is associated with the *piwei* (spleen and stomach). As the digestive function is at the base of serving nutrition to the other organs and all tissues of the body, the spleen is vital to the healthy functioning of the body and a precondition for restoring health to



other organs that may have been injured or weakened by illness. It is therefore the main organ that replenishes primordial *qi* (*yuan qi*) in the kidney; hence, the spleen is sometimes known as the foundation of body health after birth (*hou tian zhi ben* 后天之本). Renowned physician Li Dongyuan of the Song dynasty paid great attention to the spleen in therapy and based much of his medical skills on the management of the spleen function, as described in his medical classic *Treatise on the Spleen and Stomach* that has been a reference manual for generations of Chinese physicians after him up to the present day. The spleen in TCM also “commands” blood (统血) in the sense of controlling blood circulation within the blood vessels and preventing it from flowing out of the vessels.

The principal activity of the liver in TCM is to “dredge and regulate” (疏泄), which is the idea of “dredging” the routes along which *qi* flows, and at the same time regulating the flow and activity of *qi*. It is a somewhat special concept peculiar to TCM, not found in Western medicine. In Chinese therapy involving improving this liver function, the term “*shugan*” (疏肝, literally meaning “dredging and regulating the liver”) is frequently used. In this book, we choose “soothing the liver” as a more appropriate translation.

By regulating the activity of *qi*, the liver also regulates the activities of all other vital organs and tissues. Among the implications of this main function of the liver is that it promotes circulation of blood and metabolism in the body, and also assists the spleen and stomach in digestion. As is the case for the liver in Western medical anatomy, the liver in TCM also stores blood.

The heart in TCM has two main functions: to “govern” blood and to control the mind. The first function is similar to the heart function in Western medical physiology in the sense that it propels blood to circulate in the vessels; but it also has the

implication that the heart is involved in the production of blood. The second function implies that the heart stores the “spirit”, which has the function of cognition, consciousness and mental states. In this sense, the function of the heart in TCM includes some of the key functions of the brain in Western medical physiology.

The lung has the function of governing *qi* by controlling respiratory movement as well as controlling and regulating *qi* activities in the body, including the production of pectoral *qi* (*zong qi*) that we described earlier in the section on different kinds of *qi*. The lung also regulates water passages in the body for transmitting and discharging water, thereby propelling, adjusting and excreting water from the body. Another important aspect of the lung is that it assists the heart in blood circulation as in TCM theory blood from vessels converges in the lung and is redistributed to the rest of the body. This is the rationale behind the *Neijing*'s famous aphorism that “the lung is connected to all blood vessels” (肺朝百脉). One possible implication of this for the understanding of lung cancer is that a malignant tumour in the lung tends to spread to most parts of the body. In practice, we do observe that late-stage lung cancer is accompanied by spread to such diverse places as the bones, brain, liver and brain.

In this book, we use organ names in both the TCM and Western ways, and it should be clear from the context which of these is the subject under discussion. For example, when we speak of cancer of the lung or of the liver, we are referring to the physical lung and liver as in Western anatomy. However, when we are describing Chinese medications for deficiencies in the *qi* of the spleen, treating certain pathological conditions arising from cancer of the lung, it would be clear that we are referring to the TCM spleen and not the spleen of Western anatomy. The reader will notice in Chapters 3 and 4 that much of TCM therapy for

cancer patients revolve around stomach-spleen organs and the kidney used in the TCM sense.

A comprehensive discussion of the functions within TCM theory of the five *zang* and six *fu* organs is outside the scope of this introduction to TCM diagnosis and treatment. For more on the TCM theory of organs or *zangxiang* theory (藏象学说), one of the textbooks in the References section of the book<sup>12</sup> can be consulted.

## 2.4. Models for Analysis and Diagnosis of Illness

TCM theory makes use of a number of models in a similar manner to the use of models in modern science to describe physical phenomena to make it easier for people to visualize and understand them. For example, physics theory pictures gases in an enclosed chamber as comprising molecules in rapid motion like billiard balls bouncing off the walls of the vessel. Economic science depicts an economy as comprising numerous individuals acting as if they were constantly maximizing an entity called “utility”, a kind of usefulness and satisfaction that they seek primarily. Market demand and supply equations and the theory of the firm are built on this basic picture, taking into account constraints of time and physical resources.

In the case of TCM, the situation is somewhat fuzzier. This is because early medical thinkers also believed in cosmological theories of how the universe was formed and cosmic relations among stars in the heaven, and among elements on earth, and borrowed generously from these ancient models to try to understand the functioning of the human body. One result of this was that the body was viewed as a microcosm of the universe, that is, the rules that govern the external universe apply equally within the human

---

<sup>12</sup>Chai (2007); Wu (2002).

body. While we know now that many of these models on which TCM was partly based are not appropriate for describing the physical world, the fact remains that the TCM models derived from them have gone through many changes over hundreds of years so as to fit empirical observations from the medical records and clinical work of generations of physicians. One can reasonably take the view that it does not matter how the early versions of these models were originally made up in ancient times. What matters is whether the empirically based models later used by Chinese medicine provide good explanations of medical observations and provide useful guides to choosing appropriate therapies for medical conditions.

In other words, the models used as a guide to diagnosis and therapy by modern TCM physicians are heuristic models that have been found from experience (mainly clinical work and recorded case studies) to work well enough to be retained and employed by the profession. We discuss here some of the models used regularly in TCM diagnosis and therapy. Admittedly, the models used in TCM have not been subjected to the same level of rigour in clinical trials as is now customary in modern Western medicine. Nevertheless, an increasing amount of scientific work is being undertaken in universities and research institutions in China and many other countries, including those in the West, to establish the usefulness and validity of these models.

#### **2.4.1. The *yin-yang* model**

The *yin-yang* model describes many entities and states of the world in terms of a duality, *yin* and *yang*. Thus, night is *yin*, day is *yang*; female is *yin* and male is *yang*; soft, wetness, darkness and obscurity are *yin* characteristics, whilst hardness, dryness, brightness and transparency are *yang*. Looked at this way, the *yin-yang* duality is simply a common-sense way of categorizing opposing

characteristics. Applied to medical concepts, we classify heat as associated with *yang* and cold with *yin*, *qi* with *yang* and blood with *yin*, and so on.

One of the fundamental principles of the *yin-yang* model is that in a healthy human body, *yin* and *yang* are in harmony and in balance: the body is neither hot nor cold, nor is it in a state of “excess” or “deficiency”; body fluids flow smoothly instead of being in a state of stagnation. Balance implies that pairs of opposite forces are in equilibrium, a little like homeostasis in Western medicine. *Yin* and *yang* are opposed but in a harmonious coalition with each other: *yin* representing darker, cooler and more flexible forces; *yang* representing brighter, warmer and more rigid forces. The body is neither hot nor cold; there is no excess or deficiency of energy; and all fluids flow smoothly without obstruction. Illness sets in when there is imbalance and therapy consists of restoring balance.

#### **2.4.2. Causes of illness**

TCM does not focus on germs like viruses and bacteria or cellular disorders as the causes of disease, and instead places more emphasis on fundamental factors in the external as well as the body’s internal environment as the root causes. This does not mean that TCM does not acknowledge the role of germs and cellular disorders in bringing about disease or affecting its progression, but rather it views the external and internal environmental factors (pathogens) as playing a more basic role.

Among these pathogenic factors, six exogenous (climatic) factors and seven internal emotional factors are commonly identified. Modern TCM texts also factor in toxic chemicals, microbiological agents (viruses, bacteria, fungi, etc) and parasites. Although recognizing the role of these microbiological and other

agents, TCM theory defers to Western medicine to deal with these matters and emphasizes the bigger holistic picture of how climatic and emotional factors and dietary and living habits provide the preconditions for the successful invasion of these agents into the body and their taking hold to bring about disease.

The **six exogenous factors** (六淫) are as follows:

1. wind (风);
2. cold (寒);
3. summer heat (暑);
4. dampness (湿);
5. dryness (燥);
6. fire (火).

When these climatic factors invade the body and are not expelled, they can become internal pathogenic factors as well with characteristics similar to their external counterparts. Wind is blamed for the largest variety of illnesses, hence the saying that “a hundred illnesses arise from wind” (风为百病之始). Wind is characterized by movement, hence when it is in the body the problem that it causes tends to move around. Thus, pain from rheumatism is thought to be due to movement of wind within the body. Wind can also be internally generated, for example by an overexuberant liver that causes wind to travel to the head, causing dizziness, hypertension and even a cerebral stroke.

Cold and heat in the weather have parallels internally in pathological conditions of heat and cold. Summer heat is associated with extreme heat (fire) and often with dampness as well.

Dampness is high humidity when it is external and is associated with symptoms of stickiness (clinging on and being difficult to eliminate) when it is internal, slowing a person down and causing stagnation in digestion when it is present in the spleen.

Dryness, on the other hand, is present typically in autumn and winter months in temperate countries and air-conditioned rooms in the tropics.

Besides these pathogens that are directly or indirectly related to climate, there are other internal pathogens, the main ones being phlegm (*tan* 痰) and toxins (*du* 毒). Phlegm in TCM refers not just to the sticky viscous substance that lines one's throat and bronchioles, causing irritation and coughing that tries to expel it, but also to the nasty clear fluids that inhabit the digestive system and other vital organs, causing ailments such as indigestion, lassitude, insomnia, irascible moods, headaches and strokes, earning it the aphorisms “百病多由痰作祟” (a hundred ailments are induced by phlegm) and “怪病多痰” (strange diseases are caused mainly by phlegm). Interestingly, phlegm also has mischievous roles to play in ancient Greco-Roman medicine: Legendary Roman physician Galen listed phlegm as one of the four humours alongside blood, cholera and black bile, attributing one's temperament mainly to these humours, but did not give phlegm the wide and powerful influence it finds in TCM. Toxins are commonly found in TCM literature, with many herbs able to resolve toxins (*jie du* 解毒). In Chapter 4 of this book, you will come across many examples of accumulation of toxins associated with cancerous tumours, hence the elimination of toxins is an important part of cancer treatment in TCM.

The **seven emotions** (七情) in TCM are pleasure, anger, anxiety, grief, fear, shock and melancholy. The first five are more commonly encountered and each is associated with a specific *zang* organ (Table 2.2).

Pleasure refers to excessive indulgence in pleasurable activities, including excessive sex. Anger damages the liver, which explains why a sudden fit of anger can cause wind or fire to rise

**Table 2.2. The Seven Emotions and the Associated Organs.**

Emotion	Organ Damaged by Emotion
Pleasure 喜	Heart
Anger 怒	Liver
Anxiety 思	Spleen
Grief 悲	Lung
Fear 恐	Kidney
Shock 惊	Heart
Melancholy 忧	Lung, liver

from the liver to the head and cause headaches, dizziness, red eyes or elevated blood pressure. Anxiety (sometimes also just termed “thinking” or “contemplation”), on the other hand, acts slowly on the spleen, gnawing away at one’s health at the basic level of digestion and nutrition. It is the most insidious and damaging form of emotion, wearing down the body and eventually leading to more serious illnesses as the other organs are affected by the poor functioning of the spleen. Irritable bowel syndrome, accompanied by such symptoms as a bloated abdomen, loose stools, indigestion and loss of appetite, is regarded to be caused mainly by disorder of the spleen function. In social environments where there is a high and sustained level of stress in everyday living, one tends to see more illnesses related to the spleen with the underlying cause of anxiety. Grief damages the lung, and TCM postulates that this is the reason we sigh a lot when stricken with grief. Fear affects the kidney, and is thought to be the reason that extreme fear can cause incontinence and could also affect reproductive fertility.



### 2.4.3. Differentiating syndromes and applying therapy

Differentiating syndromes and applying treatment accordingly (*bianzheng lunzhi* 辨证论治) is a distinguishing feature of TCM theory and is a core part of the Chinese holistic approach to health and healing.

A syndrome or *zheng* (证) in TCM refers to a pattern of symptoms associated with a pathological process; it has a slightly similar meaning but really quite different conceptual base from that of the same term used in Western medicine. The latter uses the term to refer to “a combination of signs and/or symptoms that forms a distinct clinical picture indicative of a particular disorder”.<sup>13</sup> Common Western medical syndromes include irritable bowel syndrome, Down’s syndrome and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS).

The syndrome in TCM is a concept closely bound with the Chinese medical models of *yin-yang*, organ systems and internal pathogens. The syndrome is also different from disease (*bing* 病), which comprises a group of symptoms with a coherent and recurring aetiology such as to be found in diseases like tuberculosis, gastric ulcers or diabetes. A syndrome is a picture or manifestation of a pathological condition of the body. Simple syndromes would be such conditions as deficiency (**asthenic**) syndrome, excess (**sthenic**) syndrome, heat, cold, dampness, wind, phlegm, blood stasis and *qi* and/or blood stagnation. Usually a deficiency or excess would be of *yin*, *yang*, *qi* or blood of *qi*. Typically we would speak of an excess of heat, or a deficiency of *yin* or *yang*.

More complex syndromes would involve particular organs or a combination of a number of syndromes. For example, a deficiency

---

<sup>13</sup> Oxford Concise Medical Dictionary (2007).

in the *qi* of the spleen would be referred to as “deficiency of spleen *qi*”. If the *yang* of the liver is in excess and there is at the same time *qi* stagnation in the liver, the complex syndrome would be called “excess of liver *yang* with *qi* stagnation”.

Many diseases can exhibit the same syndrome at a particular phase of the development of the disease. Cancer is a disease, but at various stages of the development of the disease, one can observe *qi* deficiency of the spleen, heat in the liver or deficiency in kidney *yin*. TCM therapy is aimed at reducing or eliminating these syndromes as an integral part of alleviating the symptoms of the disease and eliminating the disease. It should now be quite clear why the same syndrome can be found in many diseases. For example, *qi* weakness is seen in coronary heart disease as well as stomach ulcers. A disease is usually in a dynamic state. In the course of its progression (called “pathogenesis”) it can exhibit different syndromes. For example, tuberculosis is a disease with symptoms of coughing up blood, daily fever, lassitude and loss of weight. A person with the disease would exhibit different TCM syndromes at different stages of its progression such as *qi* stagnation in the stomach/spleen, followed by deficiency of kidney *yang*, and would therefore require a different treatment regimen at each stage.

#### 2.4.4. Diagnostic model of the four examinations

TCM diagnosis is largely about determining the syndromes present in the body at a given time. This is achieved by the classical method of the four examinations (*si zhen* 四诊 or *wang wen wen que* 望闻问切) comprising the following:

1. visual observation (望);
2. listening and olfaction (闻);

3. inquiry (问);
4. pulse-taking and palpation (切).

The basic principle of the four examinations is to make inferences about the body's internal condition based on symptoms observable by the physician. In ancient times, the physician did not have diagnostic tools like X-rays, laboratory blood tests, ultrasound and MRI that are now the common fare of Western physicians. The modern TCM physician continues in the tradition of the ancients by relying on the four examinations to detect external symptoms that allow him to draw conclusions about the patient's *syndromes*. This is akin to a mapping process, where each observation determines the locus of one aspect of the patient's condition. From the overall map that is presented after completing the four examinations, there is usually sufficient information for the experienced physician to draw a conclusion about the patient's internal condition. We briefly describe here some of the main features in the application of the four examinations.

#### 2.4.4.1. *Visual observation*

The patient's face is observed in detail for such manifestations as the colour of the skin, the presence or absence of a healthy glow, the spirit in his eyes (whether full of life, dispirited, filled with anger or sadness, etc) and the presence of unusual growths or pigmentation of the skin. The patient's manner of walking is also observed as he walks into the physician's clinic, and anything unusual in his posture and gait is noted. His whole body is also examined if the physician feels that is necessary.

The examination of the tongue is an extremely important part of the visual observation. Several aspects of the tongue are

noted: its size (whether thin and withered, or swollen with tooth indentations, or normal), its colour and, very significantly, the texture and the colour of the fur on the tongue. A slightly red tongue is normal but a deeper red could indicate internal heat, whilst a dark tongue with a purplish hue is often associated with poor blood circulation and blood stasis.

A person of normal health would have thin whitish fur on the tongue. Thick greasy fur indicates the presence of dampness, while unusually thin fur, or no fur at all, can imply the presence of *yin* deficiency resulting in asthenic internal heat. Thick yellowish fur is usually associated with internal heat resulting from an excess syndrome.

#### 2.4.4.2. *Listening and olfaction*

The physician listens to the patient's voice to determine if it is weak or strong, smooth or hoarse, clear or slurred. His manner of breathing, whether slow or hurried, smooth or laboured, shallow or deep, and the presence of cough are all noted. Olfaction, or detecting unusual odours from the body, is also part of the examination process.

#### 2.4.4.3. *Inquiry*

For the first visit to a physician, the patient should be asked a long list of questions concerning his past medical history, bowel movements, urination, appetite, sleep, adaptability to hot and cold environments, aversion to wind, sexual activities, eyesight and moods. This could take 15 to 30 minutes depending on the complexity of the patient's condition. Of course, he is also asked to describe how he feels, and the main medical complaint that led him to consult the physician.

An experienced physician can ask searching and penetrating questions that allow him to accurately narrow down the range of conditions with which the patient might be afflicted. In a sense, the inquiry part of the four examinations is the most challenging but also the most rewarding one as a tremendous amount of information can be extracted from this process. Modern Western doctors who rely heavily on laboratory diagnostic tests and spend less time understanding how the patient feels could be missing crucial information that can help the doctor determine the patient's condition.

#### 2.4.4.4. *Pulse-taking and palpation*

There is a popular belief about Chinese physicians that a good one can know everything about a patient by taking his pulse. There are even stories of physicians who took pulses by tying a string to the patient's wrist and detecting his pulse through the string without touching the patient, then going on to make an accurate diagnosis of the patient's condition. Legend has it that the queen and concubines of a Chinese emperor cannot be physically touched by the royal physician who therefore has to rely on this unusually discreet method of pulse-taking.

The practical truth is that the pulse is but only one indicator of the patient's condition. Although an important indicator, it need not be the most crucial one; neither is it normally sufficient to allow the physician to determine accurately the syndromes present in the patient.

Nevertheless it cannot be denied that pulse-taking is a crucial part of the examination process for a patient. TCM differentiates between dozens of different pulses, determined by placing three fingers on the patient's wrist (left and right in turn). Some of the common types of pulses encountered in

**Table 2.3. Types of Pulses and Their Indications.**

Type of Pulse	Indication
Floating pulse (浮脉)	External syndrome, near skin level
Sunken pulse (沉脉)	Internal syndrome, deeper in the body
Moderately slow pulse (缓脉)	Dampness and weakness in spleen/stomach
Fast pulse (数脉)	Heat syndrome
Weak pulse (虚脉)	Asthenic syndrome, usually in <i>qi</i> and blood
Feeble pulse (弱脉)	Decline in <i>qi</i> and blood
Powerful pulse (实脉)	Sthenic syndrome
Slippery pulse (滑脉)	Retention of phlegm and fluid; sthenic heat
Thready pulse (细脉)	Asthenia of <i>qi</i> and blood
Taut pulse (弦脉)	Phlegm; liver and gallbladder disorders
Tense pulse (紧脉)	Cold syndrome; food retention

clinical practice are listed in Table 2.3 together with their usual indications.

#### **2.4.5. Principles of health and therapy in TCM**

The concept of health in TCM derives from the *Neijing* notion that human bodies in harmonious balance — within the body as well as with their natural environments — do not fall ill. This is to a large extent consistent with the idea of evolutionary medicine that the human body is adapted to survive in its natural environment if it is protected against external pathogens by prudent living and maintains health internally by having proper control over diet, emotions, and adequate exercise. However, it has been pointed out by evolutionary biologists

that the body is not perfect, and that evolution leaves some defects that sometimes result in disease, and that environmental changes can also trigger new disorders.<sup>14</sup>

When the body falls ill, TCM views it as the presence of one or more syndromes. Hence, the main principle of therapy is to resolve or eliminate the syndromes so that the body returns as close as possible to its natural healthy state of being in internal balance and in harmony with its environment. It is in this sense that TCM is said to be holistic: its diagnostic and therapeutic methods attempt to look at the body as a whole in terms of internal and external harmony. The principle of therapy is therefore deceptively simple: restore the body as close as possible to its normal state by alleviating or eliminating as many syndromes as possible present. Unlike Western medicine, TCM does not specifically try to attack germs present or kill off diseased cells (such as cancer cells). Instead, it tries to restore balance, and when that is achieved the germs and diseased cells are either destroyed or kept under control so that the body functions normally. The combination of TCM and Western medical therapies can potentially achieve the best results: it addresses the imbalances at the holistic level and uses the tremendous curative arsenal of Western medicine to attack disease-causing agents and diseased cells. Many examples of this combined approach to cancer therapy will be covered in Chapters 3 and 4.

The principle of TCM therapy targeted at syndromes is relatively straightforward: combat the syndrome with the opposite force or countervailing measure. When there is heat, we cool the body or dissipate the heat; when there is cold, we warm it; when there is stagnation of *qi* or blood, we promote flow; when there is deficiency or weakness in the *qi* of a particular organ, we

---

<sup>14</sup> See, for example, Neese and Williams (1996).

strengthen or tonify the *qi* of that organ; when there is phlegm, we use phlegm-clearing drugs to resolve it; when there is dampness, we dry the body by expelling dampness; when there is wind, we quell or calm the wind with wind-resolving medications. Simple as these measures may sound, it takes an experienced and skilful physician to diagnose the symptoms and decide which ones to treat with higher priority and to select the combination of herbs, acupuncture and other therapy modalities that would best achieve these results, taking into account the individual constitution and condition of the patient at any particular time. As the case studies in Chapter 5 will show, cancer patients usually have a variety of syndromes simultaneously present and are also weakened by surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy, so they are not always able to tolerate or benefit from common herbs used to treat particular syndromes. The judgement and experience of the attending physician is then of particular importance.

There are four principal modes of therapy in Chinese medicine: herbs, acupuncture, *tuina* (medical massage) and *qigong*. These are used either singly or in combination, depending on the condition of the patient and the resources available.

Herbs and acupuncture are the most common modes, often used together, one reinforcing the other or covering an aspect of therapy for which it is more appropriate. For example, a person with back pain caused by strain or trauma to the back muscle or the spinal vertebra could be administered acupuncture to improve *qi* and blood circulation in the affected areas; this can be supplemented by herbs that promote circulation and remove blood stasis. In this case, herbs and acupuncture complement and reinforce each other. On the other hand, a person suffering from a respiratory infection and has a running nose and cough would benefit from acupuncture in the nasal, chest and certain acupuncture points on his arms to relieve nasal congestion. But



acupuncture is not as effective for the elimination of heat and clearing of phlegm in his chest. This is better achieved with cooling herbs such as *Ge Gen* (葛根) and *Ju Hua* (chrysanthemum) and phlegm-resolving herbs such as *Ban Xia* (半夏) and *Chen Pi* (陈皮).

*Tuina* is closely related to acupuncture as it works on the same points and meridians as acupuncture, except that instead of needles, the hands and fingers of the therapist are employed. *Tuina* has the advantage of being non-invasive and more comfortable for some people than acupuncture needles. It can also be more effective than acupuncture for certain muscular and joint conditions.

*Qigong* involves, among other things, the promotion of *qi* generation and *qi* flow in the body. There are two main types: dynamic (moving) *qigong* (动功) and quiescent *qigong* (静功). The former is practised by movement of the body and limbs, combined with suitable breathing; the latter is centred on focusing the mind through meditation and breathing techniques.

All modes of therapy are potentially useful for cancer patients, although there is a predominance of herbal medicine. The use of acupuncture and *qigong* may be appropriate in the recovery phase for cancer cases (see, for example, Case 2 on lung cancer in Chapter 5).

## 2.5. TCM as Science

Is TCM a science? A person trained in modern physical and biological sciences could be forgiven for dismissing any claim that TCM makes to being a science. To start with, many of the concepts and entities that form the basis of TCM theory are not measurable or even detectable by scientific instruments. For example, *qi* has never been captured in a bottle for chemical

analysis, nor has the phlegm that causes a multitude of disorders in the body been isolated and its physical properties observed and recorded. With regard to TCM therapeutic methods, while there are many recorded case studies of physicians who healed patients using the principle of differentiating syndromes, very little has been done by way of large-scale clinical trials that are expected in evidence-based Western medicine.

Nevertheless there is a sense in which TCM is similar to the physical and biological sciences: it is based on empirical observations and inferences drawn from these observations. TCM theory uses complex concepts like *qi* and phlegm and a simplified picture of the human body comprising a few organs and a network of meridians. It can be interpreted as having invented these concepts and entities in order to explain the behaviour of the body in a way that makes them useful for diagnosis and healing. It sets out a set of principles of diagnosis and therapy by differentiating syndromes based on these pictures of the human body and models for the behaviour of these fluids, organs and meridians. These principles are tested each time a physician applies them to diagnose and treat a patient. Over thousands of years, these principles have been modified and refined to fit clinical experience.<sup>15</sup>

Hence, we can regard TCM entities and models as useful analogies and convenient constructs, heuristic in nature, based on the best fit they can make to empirical experience of treating illnesses. They are not to be understood literally and are more correctly regarded as useful tools for the purpose of using herbs, acupuncture and other therapies to help people overcome their illnesses and achieve a state of health. TCM is a science in this somewhat narrow and limited sense. In the tradition of Chinese

---

<sup>15</sup>See Hong (2009) for a comparison of the paradigms of Chinese and Western medicines.

pragmatism, what the underlying correct picture of the human body is not as important as whether or not this body of theory works as a system of medicine. In the words of the greatest pragmatist of modern China, Deng Xiaoping, what matters is not whether a cat is black or white, but whether it can catch mice. The history of Chinese medicine and the accumulated wisdom of physicians over thousands of years suggest that Chinese medicine is by no means perfect and cannot always be relied on to work, but that it has worked better in some areas than in others. Where it has worked, it has been able to play a significant and useful role in health care up to the present day. The effectiveness of TCM as complementary and alternative therapy to Western medicine in cancer management is one instance of the continuing usefulness of this method of healing.

# HERBS AND PRESCRIPTIONS FOR THERAPY

Of the four principal modes of therapy in Chinese medicine, namely herbs, acupuncture, *tuina* and *qigong*, the first is by far the most common modality used as herbs are easily accessible and can be boiled in the convenience of the home and readily consumed at appropriate times. In this chapter we discuss the use of Chinese herbs in general for health promotion and medical therapy. This serves as background information and knowledge for understanding the remainder of the book in which frequent reference will be made to prescriptions using Chinese herbs.

### 3.1. Chinese *Materia Medica*

In this book, we have used the common term “Chinese herbs” to refer to the whole range of natural materials that are used in Chinese medications. The correct term for these materials is “*materia medica*” as Chinese medical materials are derived not just from plants, but also animal parts and minerals. For convenience we henceforth simply use the term “herbs” to refer to *materia medica*.

Medicinal herbs have been used in Chinese medical practice for health promotion and treatment of illnesses for thousands of years. The properties and nature of these herbs and their therapeutic effects have been carefully studied and documented by over a hundred generations of herbalists and physicians. The earliest extant manual on herbs was written by the legendary Shennong of the Western Han dynasty (201 BC to 24 AD) in the classic *Shennong Herbal Manual* (神农本草经). This contained detailed descriptions of 365 herbs which he had come across in his travels across fields and mountains all over the country. Shennong personally tested these herbs on himself for toxicity and side effects at considerable risk to his life and health. During the Ming dynasty in 1578, the most comprehensive record of Chinese herbs to date was compiled, which has since served as a reference text for Chinese physicians and pharmacists. The *Compendium of Materia Medica* or *Bencao gangmu* (本草纲目) covered 1892 herbs (inclusive of those of animal and mineral origins). The encyclopaedic nature of these scholarly works testifies to the empirical scientific tradition in Chinese medicine which relies on clinical evidence provided by detailed observation, record and analysis.

In modern times, most of these herbs have been analysed in the laboratory and in clinical trials for therapeutic properties, toxicity and side effects and the accumulation of these studies and the experience of earlier generations of physicians have been carefully documented in modern texts on Chinese medicinal herbs. Much work remains to be done because the variety of herbs is very large and their complexity of a much higher order of magnitude as each herb contains dozens and sometimes over a hundred different ingredients and kinds of molecules in contrast to Western drugs that mainly comprise a single molecule for

each drug. Some aspects of using Chinese herbs are worthy of note and we briefly describe them here.

### 3.2. Preparation and Consumption of Herbs for Medicinal Use

Boiling is the most common way of extracting medical ingredients from herbs, and the resultant liquid medicine is known as a decoction (tang 汤). The standard procedure for decoction is to boil the herbs for about 45 minutes, initially with high heat followed by moderate heat, using enough water to get one bowl. After that the same herbs should be boiled for 30 to 45 minutes for a second extraction, yielding a second (more diluted) bowl. Finally, the two bowls are mixed and separated again into two bowls of even concentration, for use within a single day. In some cases, the prescription may require using the decoction three times a day, in which case more water should be used to yield three bowls.

While this is the standard procedure, one has to take into account certain herbs that contain volatile ingredients, such as *Bo He* (薄荷) and *Xiang Fu* (香附), which should be added and boiled for only 10 minutes or less at the end of the second boil.

Besides decoctions, herbs can also be prepared to yield other forms for storage and consumption. Among these the powder (*san* 散) form is one of the most common, followed by pills and boluses. Medicinal ingredients in liquid form can also be extracted using alcohol in the form of Chinese white wine; these are particularly useful for tonic preparations.

The correct time to take herbal medications depends on the kind of medication, in particular whether or not they contain ingredients to which the stomach and the rest of the digestive system may be sensitive, such as herbs that are acidic in nature or

are overly cool or warm in nature. Tonics are best ingested on an empty stomach before meals to ensure that the precious ingredients are better absorbed. Medicines that potentially irritate the digestive system are best taken after meals, whilst preparations for calming and tranquilizing effects are best taken at night before retiring to bed. Purgatives like *Da Huang* (大黃) should be avoided straight after or just before meals as the purging effect may interfere with the digestion of food and limit its absorption.

### 3.2.1. Processing of herbs

It should be noted that the processing of herbs can change the nature and properties of the herbs, so the use of some herbs should take into account the processing they have undergone before they are sold to the consumer. This helps to reduce toxicity and, sometimes changes its nature. Just as tea in mostly unprocessed form (like some green teas) can change its properties after processing by drying and warming, turning into a warmer and darker tea (like oolong or pu'er), so processing of herbs can also change their medicinal effects. For example, *Sheng Di Huang* (生地黃 raw rehmannia) is cold and bitter-sweet in nature and is used for clearing heat and cooling the blood, whereas the processed form *Shu Di Huang* (熟地黃) is warm and sweet and useful for enriching blood and nourishing *yin*.

### 3.3. Contraindications and Toxicities

Contraindications are conditions under which certain herbs may not be used or used only with caution and under proper medical instruction; this should be carefully observed when using herbs. Contraindications are well documented for all herbs in the Chinese pharmacopoeia. Many of these contraindications

pertain to patients with weak or cold stomach/spleen symptoms, or have liver heat and wind disorders associated with high blood pressure, and to women who are pregnant or undergoing menses. For example, *She Xiang* (麝香) is known to be able to induce spontaneous abortion; *Chuan Wu* (川乌), *Chuan Xiong* (川芎) and *Hong Hua* (红花), all of which can remove blood stasis and improve blood circulation, should be used with caution by women who are pregnant or undergoing menses. American ginseng, (*Xi Yang Shen* 西洋参) is cool and can hurt the stomach and spleen of a patient with a weak or overly cool stomach.

**Toxicity** is a principal concern to users of Chinese herbs, particularly those in the West who have heard or read stories of the dangerous toxic effects of certain Chinese medicines. The true situation is that the toxicity of Chinese herbs and their side effects are well documented and the herbs can be safely used under competent medical guidance. In this regard, it is important to distinguish between two sources of toxicity:

1. Toxicity caused by impurities in the herbs. As herbs are mostly derived from the root, stem, bark, flower, seed and fruit of plants growing in the wild or under cultivation, impurities can enter through pollution in the atmosphere and soil. It would be fair to say that most Chinese herbs contain small albeit acceptable quantities of such impurities. The same applies to vegetables and fruits used in daily living throughout the world: much would depend on proper supervision of agriculture, the use of chemical fertilizers and the atmospheric and soil pollution in the regions where these foods are cultivated. Health and agricultural authorities usually require stringent checks to be made on the foods that are grown or imported for consumption. Unfortunately, the same level of rigour in supervising Chinese herbs has not been put in place in most countries.



Hence, it is important to obtain these herbs from reliable and reputable sources.

2. Natural toxicities of the herbs. As with Western drugs which have side effects, there are natural side effects or toxicities associated with some Chinese herbs. Most of these toxicities are not significantly harmful when the herbs are consumed in prescribed quantities; however, they are best used under the supervision of a physician who understands how they should be used and is able to provide guidance on the effects of these toxicities in the light of the condition of the patient. But it is generally true that because these herbs have been in use for hundreds, even thousands of years, their toxicities are well understood and documented in the Chinese pharmacopoeia, and there is very little risk associated with ingesting them under proper medical supervision.

The mutual **compatibility of herbs** should also be noted. Certain herbs can react with other drugs to cause undesired effects. Chinese medicine has identified these and listed them as the “18 incompatibilities” (*shibafan* 十八反). For example, *Ban Xia* is incompatible with *Wu Tou*, ginseng with *Li Lu*.

The interaction of Chinese herbs with Western drugs is not a well-researched area, and is a matter of concern to patients who are on Western medication and also wish to use some Chinese herbs. It is generally true that there are not many cases in which the interaction of common Chinese herbs with Western drugs becomes a significant problem but, as a precaution, patients are usually advised not to take them together or, if they should be taken together, that there be a two- to three-hour interval between taking Western and Chinese medicines. This unfortunately is not foolproof, as some Western drugs are active for much longer than three hours, particularly those that

are controlled-release or sustained-release in design. As such, it is safer to consult competent physicians if the two kinds of medicine are taken together. One of the common areas of interaction is the use of blood thinners like aspirin and warfarin; it is generally inadvisable to take herbs in Chinese medicine that are classified as promoting blood circulation and removing blood stasis (*huoxue huayu* 活血化癥), as the latter tend also to have a blood-thinning effect, thereby magnifying the blood-thinning effect of the Western drugs beyond a safe level.

In the case of cancer treatment with a combination of chemotherapy and Chinese herbs, Professor Yu's experience is that the herbs used for cancer management rarely ever interfere with chemotherapy. However, a word of caution may be in order as many new chemotherapy drugs are being introduced in the market at a rapid pace and there is no assurance that no incompatibility might occur in particular cases. As such, it would be prudent for the patient to keep the Western doctor informed of the Chinese herbs he is taking and follow advice from the doctor, or use them only when he is not undergoing chemotherapy.

### 3.4. Classification of Herbs

Herbs can be classified according to their natural characteristics, or according to their therapeutic effects.

#### 3.4.1. Classification of herbs by natural characteristics

The **natural characteristics** of herbs include their properties, flavours and meridian tropism (归经), which is an indication of the meridians along which their therapeutic effects prefer to travel.

The **property** of a herb refers to its warming or cooling effect on the body. More specifically, herbs are classified as follows: hot,

warm, neutral, cool and cold. As indicated in the last chapter, these warm and cool properties do not refer to their temperature but the effect on pathogenic heat and cold. Thus, peppermint and chrysanthemum are cool, whilst cinnamon and ginseng are warm. Herbs that are hot have stronger effects than warm herbs and can have more serious side effects like internal heat if taken in excess. Examples are *Fu Zi* and dried ginger. Conversely, herbs that are cold like gypsum and *Mu Dan Pi* (made from the root of the peony plant) are used to remove internal heat, but can have the side effects of harming the stomach and spleen if inappropriately used.

The **flavour** of a herb is akin to its taste, except that in Chinese medicine certain actions are associated with the flavour classification, hence there is not always an exact correspondence between flavour and taste. The five flavours are pungent (辛), sweet (甘), sour (酸), bitter (苦) and salty (咸), and their common actions are shown in Table 3.1.

**Table 3.1. The Five Flavours and Their Common Actions.**

Flavour	Action	Example
Pungent	Dispersing and promoting circulation of <i>qi</i> and blood	<i>Bo He</i> (Herba Menthae)
Sweet	Nourishing, harmonizing and moistening	<i>Ginseng</i>
Sour	Absorbing, consolidating and astringent action	<i>Wu Mei</i> (dried plum)
Bitter	Drying or resolving dampness, purging	<i>Da Huang</i>
Salty	Softening hard nodes or masses and promoting defecation	<i>Mang Xiao</i>

Each herb is thought to have one or more preferential routes along the meridians for their actions to affect specific organs. Chrysanthemum and wolfberry seeds both prefer the liver meridian, and are often used in therapies involving the liver; they also have a preference for the lung meridian and are used in some cough medications.

### 3.4.2. Classification of herbs by therapeutic effects

Herbs are also classified according to their principal therapeutic effects. Some of the main classifications are as follows:

1. Diaphoretics (解表药): removing either warm or cold pathogens at the surface level.
2. Heat-clearing herbs (清热药): clearing internal heat.
3. Purgatives (泻下药): lubricating the last section of the intestine or inducing diarrhoea to move bowels and relieve constipation.
4. Dampness-removing herbs (祛湿药): eliminating dampness within the body and promoting diuresis.
5. Interior-warming herbs (温里药): warming the interior of the body and dispelling cold.
6. Qi-regulating herbs (理气药): promoting the movement of *qi*.
7. Herbs relieving food retention (消食药): helping with digestion and relieving food retention.
8. Haemostatic herbs (止血药): assisting in stopping bleeding internally and externally, by cooling the blood, warming the channels or astringent action.
9. Herbs invigorating the blood and removing stasis (活血化瘀药): promoting better blood flow and removing stasis.

10. Phlegm-resolving herbs (化痰药): removing phlegm in the body.
11. Tranquilizers (安神药): calming the mind.
12. Calming liver and wind (平肝熄风药): calming the liver and suppressing hyperactive *yang*, or calming liver wind.
13. Tonics (补益药): tonics for *qi*, blood, *yin* and *yang*.
14. Astringents (收敛固涩药): arresting discharge of excessive perspiration, diarrhoea, excessive urination, etc.

Although a herb may be classified according to its main action, most herbs have several other actions. This is because a herb contains a large variety of components and its action cannot be captured by just one classification. For example, wolfberry seeds or *Gou Qi Zi* (枸杞子) has the main therapeutic effect of tonifying the *yin* of the liver and kidney; it also improves the eyesight and also nourishes the lung.

A list of herbs used in the treatment of various conditions associated with cancer is provided in Appendix 1.

### 3.5. Chinese Medical Prescriptions

“*Fangji*” (方剂) is the TCM term for a medical prescription. The character “*fang*” (方) means “method”; in ordinary language, “*youfang*” (有方) means “having the right method, or the correct approach, to a problem”. “*Ji*” means “medicine”; hence “*fangji*” denotes medicine formulated by a good method, i.e. a good prescription.

Chinese physicians have found over the years that herbs can be combined in a certain way to achieve the best desired result; much like a cocktail has a combination of ingredients to yield the best taste, or a food recipe to give us an appetizing and nutritious dish. Unlike Western medicine, Chinese prescriptions are

customized for the individual, taking into account the type and severity of his syndromes as well as his constitution and state of health. However, Chinese medicine has developed over thousands of years also a number of standard prescriptions that can be used for patients falling within a category of syndromes. In practice, these standard or classical prescriptions can and often are modified by the physician to suit the individual.

These standard prescriptions are classified by therapeutic effect, similar to the way herbs are classified. Because the prescriptions contain several herbs, each playing a different role, a better result is usually obtained than by using just one herb. This is in contrast to Western drugs, each of which generally uses one molecule to act as the active ingredient, with other ingredients only providing a base for the delivery of that active ingredient. The general principle for combining herbs in Chinese medicine is based on one of four possible roles that each herb can play, namely the monarch, ministerial, adjuvant and guiding roles, also known as *jun* (君), *chen* (臣), *zuo* (佐) and *shi* (使) respectively.

1. The monarch or *jun* herb plays the core therapeutic role.
2. The ministerial or *chen* herb enhances the former's effect.
3. The adjuvant or *zuo* herb plays a complementary role, supporting the monarch herb by working on a related concomitant condition, or reducing toxicities and side effects, if any, of the monarch and ministerial herbs.
4. The guiding or *shi* herb helps direct the other herbs to the particular organs and harmonizes their joint action.

For example, the classical prescription called the Decoction of the Four Noble Herbs (*Si Jun Zi Tang* 四君子汤) contains ginseng (monarch herb), *Bai Zhu* 白朮 (ministerial herb),

*Fu Ling* 茯苓 (adjuvant herb) and *Zhi Gan Cao* 炙甘草 (guiding herb). A common tonic for the spleen and stomach, this prescription replenishes *qi* and strengthens the spleen. It takes into account that spleen problems usually are accompanied by dampness. In this prescription, ginseng is a strong *qi* tonic, *Bai Zhu* is also a *qi* tonic that enhances ginseng's *qi*-replenishing action, whilst *Fu Ling* both adds to the *qi* tonic effect and removes dampness. *Zhi Gan Cao* harmonizes the combination; it is also in itself a mild *qi* and spleen tonic.

Not every prescription has herbs playing all four roles in combination. Many prescriptions have two or more herbs playing the same role. For example, the classic prescription Pill of Six Ingredients with Rehmannia (*Liu Wei Di Huang Wan* 六味地黄丸), a popular *yin* tonic for nourishing the kidney, comprises one monarch herb (rehmannia or *Shu Di Huang*), two ministerial herbs (*Shan Zhu Yu* and *Shan Yao*) and three adjuvant herbs (*Ze Xie*, *Mu Dan Pi* and *Fu Ling*). The monarch herb is a strong kidney tonic, whilst the two ministerial herbs also nourish the kidney, with *Shan Yao* also strengthening the spleen to complement the kidney function. The three adjuvant herbs play varying roles of reducing dampness, clearing heat arising from *yin* deficiency of the kidney and improving the transportation and transformation function of the spleen. In combination, they tonify the kidney and spleen as well as dissipate internal heat in a balanced and gentle manner, making it one of the most successful prescriptions in the history of Chinese medicine, used equally by physicians treating illnesses as well as the common man as a dietary supplement to combat the weakening of the kidney function that come with ageing and with daily stresses.

To customize a prescription, physicians often use one of the standard formulations and modify it to suit the individual's particular condition. For example, *Liu Wei Di Huang Wan* can be

modified for someone with kidney *yang* deficiency by adding warm herbs like *Gui Zhi* (cinnamon) and *Fu Zi*. If in addition the physician wishes to boost the patient's *qi* level, he could choose to add some *Huang Qi* (astragalus) and *Xi Yang Shen* (American ginseng).

As each standard prescription is targeted at a particular syndrome, patients with several syndromes could have several standard prescriptions combined into one, with suitable adjustments to avoid duplication of herbs that are used in common by the different prescriptions, as well as modifications that reflect which syndrome the physician is treating as the priority, with larger amounts of the ingredients aimed at that syndrome, and which other syndromes he is treating more gently, with smaller quantities of the relevant herbs. Thus, the formulation of a prescription for a particular patient at a given time requires judgement and experience and, in a sense, is both a science and an art, much like the culinary recipes of an expert chef.



# CANCER PREVENTION AND TREATMENT USING TCM

TCM does not deal with cancer as a particular disease or a specific syndrome, and does not have a comprehensive theory explaining the origins of cancer and the principles of therapy for this family of diseases. Western medicine has postulated and discovered the causes of various kinds of cancer, tracing them to such factors as defective genes, environmental toxins, smoking, diet, stress and viruses. Modern oncology is a vast and complicated field, and TCM does not have theories and therapies that are equivalent to those offered by modern medicine.

The *Neijing* and other Chinese medical classics do describe conditions that are very similar to those found in cancer patients. For example, the *Neijing* describes in the *Suwen* “cough from the lungs, breathlessness and gasping, sometimes even with spitting out of blood... the pallor of the face indicating the reverse flow of *qi* (气逆)”, a description of the telling symptoms of late-stage lung cancer. As to its cause, TCM attributes it to one or more syndromes: toxins in the lung (邪毒侵肺), accumulation of phlegm and dampness in the lung (痰湿内聚) and deficiency of healthy *qi* (正气内虚).

From the point of view of TCM theory, the formation of a cancerous tumour, its development and its eventual spread to other parts of the body has its origin in the loss of balance between *yin* and *yang* manifested in disorders involving the struggle between pathogens and healthy *qi*, and in excess and deficiency syndromes. Such disorders can be brought about by certain environmental and internal factors that predispose the body to them.

Combining knowledge from modern medicine with the perspectives of TCM, it has been possible to identify some of the principal factors that contribute to the incidence of cancers. Reducing exposure to or avoiding these predisposing factors can be regarded as ways of preventing or lowering the chances of contracting the disease.

We look next at some contributing factors commonly encountered in daily life that can be reduced or avoided.

#### **4.1. Avoidance of Factors Contributing to Higher Incidence of Cancers**

Based on estimates by the World Health Organization, about one third of cancers in the world can be prevented, another third can be cured and the last third can be treated to reduce suffering and prolong life.

The prevention of cancer can be approached on three fronts:

1. Avoidance and/or reduction of carcinogenic factors such as may be found in the environment (air pollution, water pollution, smoking, radiation exposure, etc) and in the diet (as in certain fermented foodstuffs, mouldy peanuts and the like).
2. Intervention in the interaction between carcinogenic factors and cells in the body to prevent the cells from turning cancerous.

3. Treating pre-cancerous growths and cellular changes to prevent them from developing into tumours; for example, removing polyps in the stomach and colon, or eliminating *Helicobacter pylori* colonies in the stomach lining that could develop into stomach cancers.

The first two approaches are the subject of much ongoing research, but current knowledge and resources do not enable us to consistently implement these preventive measures. However, pre-cancerous growths have been dealt with more successfully by modern diagnostic and treatment methods.

Drawing on TCM knowledge as well as modern medical experience, it may be useful to consider cancers as being caused by either internal or external factors, or a combination of the two. External factors constitute predisposing conditions for the development of tumours, whilst internal factors are decisive in determining if the body succumbs to external and internal causal factors. This viewpoint is consistent with the fact that all inhabitants in a given region and society are subject to about the same environmental influences, yet some contract cancers whilst others do not. This indicates that internal factors play the decisive role. Based on this approach, the following are some principal considerations for preventing the disease:

1. Eliminating or reducing external carcinogenic factors. This includes protecting employees at the workplace from harmful chemicals and pathogens and reducing environmental pollution. This is the responsibility of employers and government agencies, and is a critical factor in combating cancer. In addition, every individual should be vigilant against external carcinogenic factors and excessive radiation. For example, prolonged and intensive exposure to ultraviolet rays of the

sun can induce skin cancer. Many foodstuffs are also known or suspected to have carcinogens. These include smoked meats, barbecued foods, certain chemical fertilizers used to grow vegetables, and the consumption of foods lacking in trace elements iodine, selenium and molybdenum.

2. Some individuals have predisposing genetic factors. Where these have been discovered, appropriate steps to be taken could include increased vigilance to detect pre-cancerous growths and test for cancer markers. From the point of view of TCM, achieving internal *yin* and *yang* balance within the body is of paramount importance to reducing the possibility of succumbing to the disease. *Yin-yang* balance is achieved through time-honoured methods of health cultivation or *yangsheng*. These include changing unhealthy living habits such as smoking, eating food rich in fats and low in fibre and excessive alcohol consumption. It is also important to preserve internal emotional balance, avoiding anger, anxiety, sadness, fear and overindulgence in pleasures. Regular exercise and the practice of mind-calming exercises such as *taiji* and *qigong* are also very important. Certain herbal supplements are known to improve the body's internal defences (immune-system functions) against illness. These include herbs that tonify the spleen and kidney. Mushrooms, poria (*Fu Ling* 茯苓), Zhu Ling (猪苓), seaweed (海藻), astragalus (*Huang Qi* 黄芪), *Ling Zhi* (灵芝), *Nü Zhen Zi* (女贞子), *Xian Ling Pi* (仙灵脾) and *Gou Qi Zi* (枸杞子) are some of the more common herbs that are helpful in this respect.
3. Actively treat pre-cancerous growths or conditions that are potentially pre-cancerous. Examples of observable potential pre-cancerous growths and conditions include abnormalities on the skin and mucous membranes such as white spots on the mouth and throat mucous membranes, sores and ulcers

on the skin that do not heal after prolonged treatment, hyperplasia of the mammary gland, chronic ulcers and gastritis, ulcerative colorectitis, hepatitis B and C, liver cirrhosis, thickening of the lining of the cervix, and chronic inflammation of the pancreas.

## **4.2. Healthy Living for Cancer Prevention**

A healthy lifestyle is the best way to ward off cancers. We suggest 15 living habits that could be helpful:

1. A balanced diet with adequate amounts of proteins, carbohydrates, fats, vitamins, minerals and fibre.
2. Avoid excessive food preferences and try not to eat the same food for prolonged periods. Have a change every so often.
3. Avoid excessive consumption of alcohol.
4. Avoid smoking as it harms both you and those around you.
5. Avoid too much salt in the food as salty food might predispose you to cancers.
6. Eat foodstuffs containing natural sources of vitamins A, C and E, and ensure you have sufficient fibre, fresh vegetables and whole grains in your diet.
7. Avoid overeating and becoming overweight.
8. Minimize the amount of fermented, smoked, fried and barbecued foods as these tend to have higher levels of carcinogens.
9. Avoid food that has turned rancid or gathered bacteria and fungi.
10. Avoid excessive exposure to the sun as ultraviolet rays can induce skin cancers.
11. Observe cleanliness and hygiene in daily habits, and avoid contact with substances that may or are known to contain

- carcinogens (for example, certain PVC wrapping for food and building materials like asbestos). Stay away from public places that have been contaminated by chemical pollution.
12. Long working hours and fatigue can injure your immune system and predispose you to cancers.
  13. Be careful to avoid emotional stress as this is harmful to the immune system and the body's defences against cancer. In TCM the seven harmful emotions are overindulgence in pleasure, anger, anxiety, grief, fear, shock and melancholy.
  14. Regular exercise helps to strengthen the body against illnesses, including cancer.
  15. Actively treat any symptoms that suggest pre-cancerous changes in the body.

The reader will note that about two thirds of these “prohibitions” have to do with diet; the importance of diet in cancer prevention cannot be overemphasized.

### **4.3. Principles of Using TCM in Cancer Treatment**

Over my 40 years of clinical experience, I have observed that strengthening *qi* and improving blood circulation have important effects on the quality of life and prolonging life for cancer patients. Patients with late-stage cancers often have pronounced blood stasis problems; this is particularly so with lung cancers. I have also found that patients with stage 3 or stage 4 cancers have much higher rates of *qi* deficiency than those in stage 1 or 2. It is also apparent that chemotherapy can have severe effects on the body by inducing *qi* deficiency and blood stasis. Hence, strengthening *qi* and removing blood stasis using TCM herbs and acupuncture are important parts of the complementary arsenal for patients with late-stage cancers.

In general, illness in the human body has its origin in the loss of internal balance between *yin* and *yang*. From this point of view, cancerous growths have their fundamental origin in the loss of balance in several respects, for example between cancer cells and cells that suppress cancer growth, and between cell regeneration and cell division, resulting in rapid growth in the population of cancer cells. If we regard the factors that promote the growth of cancer cells and their spread as *yang* in character, and the suppression of cancerous tumours as *yin* in character, and also regard the increase in these factors as excess and their decline as deficiency, the entire picture fits into the TCM framework of viewing illness as reflecting several conditions: the struggle between healthy *qi* and pathogens, *yin-yang* imbalance and the presence of excess-deficiency syndromes (正邪阴阳虚实). It follows that the main treatment principle of cancer is to balance *yin* and *yang* and to strengthen the body's healthy *qi*; these in turn prevent the development of excess and deficiency syndromes.

For patients that have received treatment by surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy, some of these imbalances are in fact exacerbated by the treatment, resulting in a decline in the immune system, a weakening of the body to produce blood components like blood platelets, white blood cells and red blood cells, and the disruption of the digestive processes. This in turn causes a further weakening of *qi* and induces further imbalance. Hence, the holistic approach to managing cancer patients with complementary TCM therapy is to restore these imbalances, strengthen *qi* and remove blood stasis, regardless of the form of medical treatment the patient has undergone by Western medical methods for combating the tumour.

We discuss next specific complementary treatments for patients who have undergone each of the methods of Western treatment for tumours.

### 4.3.1. Patients who have undergone radiotherapy

Radiation therapy (radiotherapy) is used extensively in the treatment of cancers of the nasopharyngeal region, the upper oesophagus, throat, lung, cervix and uterus, and for mediastinal lymphoma. Radiotherapy basically can only achieve localized destruction of cancer cells and control their growth, but in the process it can also cause severe side effects for the whole body. The use of TCM herbs ameliorate the side effects and toxicities arising from this form of therapy besides consolidating the therapeutic effects of the treatment and prolonging the life span of the patient.

Within the TCM conceptual framework, the side effects of radiotherapy constitute a form of warm pathogen (热邪) that damages the body's *yin* and body fluids, compromises the digestive transforming function of the spleen and stomach, and inhibits the production of *qi*, resulting in various syndromes associated with these side effects. Patients who have undergone radiotherapy typically exhibit symptoms such as a dark tongue colour and pigmentation, suggesting blood stasis, as well as dry skin and dry throat; these in turn sometimes transform into internal heat.

TCM treatments for these syndromes include strengthening *qi* and nourishing *yin* (益气养阴), improving blood circulation and removing blood stasis (活血化瘀), regulating *qi* in the spleen and stomach, and tonification of the liver and kidney. Herbs commonly used for treating these syndromes are *Bei Sha Shen*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Shi Hu*, *Yu Zhu*, *Tian Hua Fen*, *Ji Xue Teng*, *Nü Zhen Zi*, *Sheng Di*, *Xuan Shen*, *Ren Dong Teng*, *Wu Wei Zi*, *Shan Yao*, *Dang Gui*, *Jie Geng*, *Sheng Gan Cao*, *Sheng Huang Qi* and *Xi Yang Shen*. For treating blood stasis, the herbs commonly used are *Chuan Xiong*, *Hong Hua*, *Dan Shen* and *Ma Lin Zi*.



These herbs can also be used to enhance the effectiveness of radiotherapy.

#### 4.3.2. Patients who have undergone chemotherapy

Chemotherapy is one of the most widely used form of treatment for cancer. Many new drugs enter the market each year, this being one of the most active areas of research for pharmaceutical companies in the West. As most patients who have undergone chemotherapy are well aware, one of the principal problems with chemotherapy is that it tends not to discriminate too well between the host body and the target adversary. In other words, in the process of combating cancer cells, much collateral damage is done to healthy cells in the body, particularly those with higher metabolic rates. Chemotherapy can induce nausea and vomiting, destruction of the bone marrow and the resultant reduction of blood cells, and a weakening of the immune system, hence lowering the body's defences against infection. Chemotherapy can damage the body's *yin* and the spleen-stomach digestive function and thereby affect liver and kidney functions as well as deplete the body's *qi* and blood. Consequently, patients undergoing chemotherapy often exhibit symptoms of giddiness, lassitude, low spirits, loss of appetite, insomnia or disturbed sleep, dry throat, and disturbance of bowel movements and urination.

It is in this area of chemotherapy side effects that I have found TCM to be able to contribute most to patient wellness, and one could say that this is one of the most successful areas of integrating Western and Chinese medicine.

In general, the best approach to treating chemotherapy side effects is strengthening the spleen and tonifying the kidney (健脾补肾). Among its principal benefits are the strengthening of the immune system and the restoration of the blood production

function of the bone marrow, as well as the improvement in appetite and digestive function for nourishing the body.

The herbs used for the major side effects are as follows:

1. Increasing red blood cells: *Huang Qi* (黄芪), *Dang Shen* (党参), *Dang Gui* (当归), *Long Yan Rou* (龙眼肉), *Da Zao* (大枣), *Sheng Shu Di* (生熟地), *E Jiao* (阿胶), *Gui Ban Jiao* (龟板胶), *Lu Jiao Jiao* (鹿角胶), *Zi He Che* (紫河车), *Gou Qi Zi* (枸杞子) and *Ren Shen* (人参).
2. Increasing white blood cells: *Huang Qi* (黄芪), *Tai Zi Shen* (太子参), *Ren Shen* (人参), *Huang Jing* (黄精), *Nü Zhen Zi* (女贞子), *Tu Si Zi* (菟丝子), *Ji Xue Teng* (鸡血藤), *Zi He Che* (紫河车), *Dang Gui* (当归), *Hu Zhang* (虎杖), *Gang Ban Gui* (扛板归), *Shan Zhu Yu* (山茱萸), *Bu Gu Zhi* (补骨脂) and *Xian Ling Pi* (仙灵脾).
3. Increasing blood platelet count: *Nü Zhen Zi* (女贞子), *Han Lian Cao* (旱莲草), *Shan Zhu Yu* (山茱萸), *Sheng Di* (生地), *Da Zao* (大枣), *Sheng Huang Qi* (生黄芪), *Zi He Che* (紫河车), *Lu Jiao Jiao* (鹿角胶), *Bie Jia Jiao* (鳖甲胶), *Gui Ban Jiao* (龟板胶), *Ji Xue Teng* (鸡血藤), *Hua Sheng Yi* (花生衣), *Shi Wei* (石苇), *Chou Hu Lu* (抽葫芦), *Qian Cao Gen* (茜草根), *Sheng Ma* (升麻), *Gang Ban Gui* (扛板归) and *San Qi* (三七).
4. Strengthening the immune system: *Huang Qi* (黄芪), *Ren Shen* (人参), *Dang Shen* (党参), *Bai Zu* (白术), *Fu Ling* (茯苓), *Zhu Ling* (猪苓), *Ling Zhi* (灵芝), *Xiang Gu* (香菇), *Nü Zhen Zi* (女贞子), *Xian Ling Pi* (仙灵脾), *Gou Qi Zi* (枸杞子), *Tu Si Zi* (菟丝子) and *Bu Gu Zhi* (补骨脂).

#### 4.3.3. Patients who have undergone surgery

Surgery remains the most common option for early-stage malignant tumours as it can be extremely effective and totally

eliminate the disease. Every tumour is different; hence, each may require a slightly different surgical procedure. Certain post-surgery side effects in the body are commonly seen with cancer patients which TCM would characterize as “depletion of *qi* and damage to blood” (耗气伤血). This in turn causes disorders in the vital organs, meridians and *yin-yang* balance. Hence, before and after surgery, it would be appropriate to regulate the body to achieve a good state of balance, both to prepare the patient for the trauma of surgery and to help him recover from it.

#### 4.3.3.1. *Pre-surgery care with TCM*

There are two aspects to preparing the patient for surgery.

The first is to strengthen the body's healthy *qi* using a variety of tonics suited to the person's constitution. These tonics combine one or both of two basic functions, fortifying the spleen and strengthening *qi* (健脾益气) and nourishing the liver and kidney (滋补肝肾). Among the well-known classical prescriptions used for these purposes are the Decoction of the Four Noble Herbs (四君子汤), *Bao Yuan Tang* (保元汤), *Ba Zhen Tang* (八珍汤) and *Shi Quan Da Bu Tang* (十全大补汤). These should be used after TCM diagnosis of the patient to determine his principal syndromes. In jurisdictions that allow it, intravenous injections of astragalus (*Huang Qi*) and ginseng (*Ren Shen*) can also be used to boost the body's healthy *qi*.

The second aspect of preparing the patient for surgery is to control the growth of the tumour before surgery using medicinal herbs, which some studies have found to achieve results similar to those of using a limited amount of chemotherapy before surgery. For example, some studies have found that

the use of *Qiu Shui Xian Xian An* (秋水仙酰胺) before breast surgery to shrink the tumour and the use of *Ya Dan Zi* emulsion (鸭胆子乳剂) for stomach cancer can achieve better results than chemotherapy. However, in practice, surgery may be called for urgently and there may not be enough time for the relatively slow-acting Chinese herbs to achieve their objective. Hence, in general, preparing the patient for surgery using appropriate tonics is the more practical method.

#### 4.3.3.2. *Post-surgery treatment*

My clinical experience with the care of cancer patients after surgery indicates that appropriate treatment with TCM herbs makes a significant difference to the patient's recovery and improves his chances of avoiding a relapse. I would recommend that the use of Chinese herbs begin as soon as the patient is able to consume food in the hospital. The method of post-surgery treatment would depend on the attending TCM physician in consultation with the surgeon and other doctors in charge of the patient. In practice, there are only a few principal methods from which to choose:

1. Regulating the functions of the spleen and stomach (调理脾胃). Owing to surgical trauma and the after-effects of anaesthesia, especially if surgery involves the alimentary canal, dysfunctioning of the digestive system is common, resulting sometimes in constipation, a bloated abdomen, loss of appetite, retention of wind in intestines, or a combination of these symptoms. Useful prescriptions include *Da Cheng Qi Tang* (大承气汤), *Xiao Cheng Qi Tang* (小承气汤) and *Xiang Sha Liu Jun Zi Tang* (香砂六君子汤).
2. Fortifying *qi* and consolidating the exterior (益气固表). Some patients suffer from excessive sweating owing to

weakness in the *qi* function of consolidating the exterior. The Jade Screen Decoction or *Yu Ping Feng San* (玉屏风散) is useful for this purpose. We can add *Wu Wei Zi* (五味子), *Hang Ju* (杭芍), *Fu Xiao Mai* (浮小麦), *Duan Long Gu* (煅龙骨) and *Duan Mu Li* (煅牡蛎) selectively, depending on the condition of the patient, to enhance the effects of this prescription for the individual patient.

3. Nourishing the *yin* and promoting clear fluids (养阴生津). Surgery often damages the *yin* and dries up the mucous membranes, causing symptoms such as a red tongue with little fur, dry mouth and throat, constipation (hardened faeces) and loss of appetite. Nourishing the *yin* and producing clear fluids is an appropriate approach to treatment. I once had a patient who had undergone surgery for colorectal cancer and suffered from such symptoms quite acutely. He had no appetite, lost a great deal of weight, had a red tongue with no fur and a deep, feeble and rapid pulse. After taking a prescription that contained a combination of *Sha Shen*, *Mai Dong*, *Shi Hu*, *Tian Hua Fen*, *Yu Zhu*, *Jie Geng*, *Zhu Ru*, *Sheng Di*, *Xuan Shen* and *Tai Zi Shen*, he recovered rapidly, regaining his appetite and his spirits. He did not follow up with chemotherapy but continued with Chinese medications. I last saw him eight years after surgery, and found him in a satisfactory state of health.

#### **4.3.3.3. *Post-surgery treatment with TCM in the longer term***

It is not sufficient to cover only the immediate post-operative period for cancer patients. It is important that they follow up with appropriate tonics and other medications to achieve internal balance and an adequate level of healthy *qi*. This gives them a better chance to attain a better state of recovery as well as reducing the chances of a relapse. Two cases from my medical files are worthy of

note. Case 1 was a patient who had his entire left lung and nearby lymph nodes removed because of lung cancer. After surgery he had an infection, high fever and adverse reaction to the intravenous drip. Recovery was very slow and he was too weak to get up from bed even three months after surgery. I intervened at this stage with TCM treatment, using the twin approach of combating pathogens and tonifying the body (攻补兼施). He gradually recovered, and the last time I saw him, seven years after surgery, his health was satisfactory. Case 2 was a Singaporean patient who had partial removal of the kidney because of a benign tumour in the kidney. Seven days after surgery, the drainage tube was not working satisfactorily and blood-like secretions were increasing in the drainage. The surgeon suggested a second operation to remove the whole kidney, but the patient was unwilling. I was requested through her friend to look into the matter, and decided to use Chinese herbs to treat her condition. I used the method of nourishing the liver and kidney, and also administered Yunnan white powder (云南白药) to treat her wound orally. Three days later, bleeding stopped, and seven days later the drainage tube was removed. We followed up with more TCM herbal treatment. Twenty years after the operation, I found her still fit and well.

#### **4.4. Combining Western Medical and TCM Treatments**

I have found from long experience of treating cancer patients that combining Western medical and TCM treatments generally yields the best results. In this regard, the four main principles to bear in mind are as follows:

1. The TCM approach of differentiating syndromes and applying therapy accordingly should be combined with identifying the disease by Western methods and treating the disease

specifically. For example, a patient with cancerous liver tumours should have these tumours reduced or eliminated by surgery and/or chemotherapy, but at the same time syndromes of spleen *qi* deficiency or blood stasis may be present as determined by TCM diagnosis. The latter should be treated with Chinese herbal medications.

2. It is necessary to treat the local disorder, such as a tumour or lesion, but also to examine imbalances in the body as a whole and treat the syndromes accordingly.
3. It may be necessary to combine the elimination of pathogens with the strengthening of the body with appropriate tonics. For example, a patient may have an excess syndrome of toxin accumulation and at the same time suffer from deficiency in *qi* or *yin*. The excess syndrome can be treated as a first priority but concurrently with gentle fortification of the body to mitigate the deficiency syndrome. When the excess syndrome has been eliminated, the treatment can then focus on the deficiency syndrome.
4. It is also necessary to consider short-term treatment and long-term therapy needs. The short-term need may be to eliminate heat pathogens or *qi* stagnation due to phlegm or dampness accumulation; the longer-term therapy may be that of building up the body's healthy *qi* to resist infections and improve motility in the digestive system and blood circulation.

In combining Western and Chinese therapies, we draw upon the best of each method of healing, using one to make up for inadequacies in the other and getting them to work together for greater therapeutic effect.

We conclude this chapter with a short discourse on the objective of medical treatment for cancer patients and its underlying ethical philosophy.

#### 4.5. Preserving Life or Eliminating the Illness?

Many years ago, I visited a large hospital in Tianjin to see a patient with late-stage cancer with obvious symptoms of a rapid deterioration in condition. The attending Western medical doctor asked me if I had any special method for arresting the uncontrolled growth of his patient's tumour. I opined that his body was already very weak. In TCM terminology, he faced the prospect of a collapse and departure of his *yin* and *yang*, which portends imminent death, and any kind of aggressive destruction of the tumour was no longer appropriate. In such a situation, prolonging life and enhancing the quality of life was the main consideration rather than the elimination of the disease. Further radiotherapy or chemotherapy would only cause more suffering and likely shorten his life. The only choice available was that of boosting his healthy *qi* and immune system with a view to improving his quality of life, if not also his longevity.



# MAJOR FORMS OF CANCER AND CASE STUDIES (I)

*From the Medical Files of Professor Yu Rencun*

*Professor Yu Rencun has seen hundreds of cancer patients over many decades. These case studies have been chosen for illustrative purposes, indicating how TCM methods are combined with Western medical treatments to prolong and improve the quality of the lives of cancer patients and sometimes to bring about recovery. For each major form of cancer, two or three cases have been selected.*

### **5.1. Lung Cancer**

Lung cancer is the most common form of cancer and accounts for the largest number of deaths from cancer in developed countries. It is on the increase worldwide.

TCM associates one or more syndromes with lung cancer: toxins in the lung (邪毒侵肺), accumulation of phlegm and dampness in the lung (痰湿内聚) and deficiency of healthy *qi* (正气内虚), with the last syndrome as the dominating causal factor. Modern medicine attributes lung cancer to atmospheric pollution, smoking, harmful radiation and carcinogenic

materials invading the body. However, as discussed in an earlier chapter, the cause of cancer is complex and is best viewed as a combination of many factors that predispose a person to the development and growth of cancerous tumours.

Western medicine treats lung cancer using one or more of three main methods, namely surgery, radiotherapy and chemotherapy. These treatments can be combined with TCM treatment, for which the patient is classified according to four major syndromes and complementary therapy administered accordingly. The four main syndromes are as follows:

1. *yin* deficiency with warm toxicity (阴虚毒热型);
2. phlegm and dampness accumulation (痰湿蕴肺);
3. blood stasis with toxicity (血瘀毒结型); and
4. deficiency of the lung and kidney (肺肾两虚型).

The following case studies illustrate how TCM is used in the treatment of a number of these syndromes.

### Case 1

Male, 58 years old, ethnic han, married.

*First visit:* 6 September 1976

*Main complaint:* Chest pain, cough and sweating one week after exploratory thoracotomy for lung cancer.

*History of present illness:* Suffering from cough and discomforts like upper respiratory tract infection, the patient underwent fluoroscopy of the chest on 19 July 1976, which detected a shadow in the right lung. A chest X-ray on 25 July confirmed atelectasis of the middle lobe of his right lung. On the next day bronchofiberscope detection discovered granulation tissues at

the entrance of the right middle lobe and the biopsy and pathologic diagnosis indicated adenocarcinoma. An exploratory thoracotomy on the right side was performed on 31 August. Some metastatic lymph nodes with a firm texture existed on the right middle lobe and inferior porta pulmonis extending left into the mediastinum. Because of such a wide range of metastatic lymph nodes, from porta pulmonis to mediastinum, these could not be removed completely even if a complete pneumonectomy had been performed. The surgeons took a biopsy and located stainless marks on the surface of the lymph nodes in preparation for future radiotherapy; they did not proceed with further surgery to remove the tumour, and closed the thorax.

*Past medical history:* The patient suffered from stomach discomfort, abdominal distension and loose stools for over 20 years; hypotension, anaemia and dystrophia; susceptible to colds and lung infections. The patient had been smoking for 20 years and stopped in 1963. Since 1973, it was diagnosed as a complete right atrioventricular block.

*Western medical diagnosis:* Bronchial adenocarcinoma of the middle lobe of the right lung; metastatic lymph nodes from the right lung porta pulmonis to mediastinum; atelectasis of the middle lobe of the right lung.

*Tongue and pulse manifestation:* Pale tongue with tooth indentations and thin whitish fur; thin, slippery and slightly rapid pulse.

*TCM differentiation of syndromes:* Post-operational *qi* deficiency of the spleen and lung, masses of inner toxic phlegm.

*Methods and principles of therapy:* Replenishing *qi* and strengthening the exterior, reducing phlegm and resolving masses.

*Prescription:* Raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, parched *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fang Feng* 10 g, *Fu Xiao Mai* 30 g, calcined *Long Gu* 30 g, calcined *Mu Li* 30 g, prepared *Qian Hu* 12 g, *Ma Dou Ling* 10 g, raw *Pi Pa Ye* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 30 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Sichuan Bei Mu* 10 g, northern *Sha Shen* 15 g and *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g (six doses prescribed).

*Second visit: 13 September 1976*

After the patient took the last TCM prescription, symptoms of coughing and sweating were under control with less phlegm and good appetite. The tongue and pulse manifestation was unchanged. The method of therapy was maintained with the following modifications: eliminated *Pi Pa Ye* from the prescription and added *Zi Yuan* 12 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g and *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g.

*Fourth visit: 27 September 1976*

The patient had undergone radiotherapy seven times each with 200 cGy. His appetite had declined but cough was still under control. The tongue was pale red with tooth indentations while the pulse was still thin and slippery. To deal with the side effects of radiotherapy, TCM treatment shifted focus to tonifying the spleen and kidney, reducing phlegm and resolving tumour.

*Prescription:* Raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Dang Shen* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Yunnan Fu Ling* 12 g, *Shen Qu* 10 g, *Tian Dong* 15 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Tu Si Zi* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Bei Mu* 10 g, *Qian Hu* 12 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Shi Wei* 30 g and *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g.

*Seventh visit: 18 October 1976*

While undergoing radiotherapy, the patient had warm palms and frequent night urination. His bowel movements returned to normal. The tongue was still pale red and with tooth indentations. The pulse was thin, slippery and rapid.

*Prescription:* Removed *Tian Dong*, *Shen Qu*, *Qian Hu*, *Xia Ku Cao* and *Shi Wei* in the previous prescription and added *Sha Shen* 15 g, raw *Di Huang* 10 g, prepared *Di Huang* 10 g, *Dan Shen* 15 g, *Qian Shi* 12 g, *Ye Jiao Teng* 30 g and *Yi Zhi Ren* 12 g.

*Subsequent visit:* 15 November 1976

Radiotherapy treatment was completed without pronounced side effects, but the patient suffered from insomnia with warm palms. The tongue was pale red with tooth indentations and thin whitish fur. The left pulse was deep, thin and slippery; the right pulse was wiry and slippery. Considering that the radiotherapy had injured *yin* and depleted *qi*, TCM therapy was modified further to supplement *qi*, nourish *yin* and remove toxins to strengthen healthy *qi*.

*Prescription:* *Sha Shen* 30 g, raw *Di Huang* 10 g, prepared *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 30 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 12 g, *Gua Lou* 30 g, *Bei Mu* 10 g, *Qian Hu* 12 g, *Tao Ren* 10 g, *Shan Dou Gen* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 30 g, *Long Kui* 30 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g and parched *Suan Zao Ren* 15 g.

*20 December 1976 to April 1977*

The patient had a cold and a fever accompanied by radiation pneumonia. The symptoms resolved after the administration of antibiotics and Chinese herbal medicines. The patient was given 5-fluorouridine chemotherapy 20 times totalling 20 g and CCNU 80 mg once. Meanwhile, TCM therapy was concurrently administered. The patient experienced only minimal side effects from chemotherapy.

*Subsequent visit:* 11 April 1977

Generally well, the patient was eating well and in good spirits. The tongue was still pale red with tooth indentations, the pulse thin, slippery and slightly fast. TCM treatment aimed to

consolidate the effects of tonifying the spleen and strengthening *qi*, removing toxins and resolving tumours.

*Prescription:* Raw *Huang Qi* 20 g, *Dang Shen* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, raw *Shan Yao* 18 g, *Ban Xia* 12 g, *Sha Ren* 6 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Bei Mu* 10 g, *Hai Zao* 10 g, parched *Shan Zha* 10 g, parched *Shen Qu* 10 g, parched *Mai Ya* 10 g, *Sha Shen* 18 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Long Kui* 30 g, *Qian Hu* 10 g and *Zi Wan* 10 g.

Since May 1977, the patient had been practising the New Guolin *qigong* therapeutic method, exercising four to five hours each day. His physical strength, appetite and spirits were much improved. The patient continued with Chinese medication for building resistance to dispel pathogenic factors. A chest X-ray review and comprehensive inspection each year found no recurrence of the tumour or metastasis. The patient went back to work early in 1979. ECG examination on 11 October 1979 found that the complete right bundle branch block was no longer present.

From 1980 to April 1983, his condition was stable. TCM therapy reverted to the original prescription with some modifications.

*Prescription:* Raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Dang Shen* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, parched *Shan Zha* 10 g, parched *Shen Qu* 10 g, parched *Mai Ya* 10 g, *Shan Yao* 10 g, parched *Jiang* 6 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 10 g, *Shou Wu Teng* 30 g, *Teng Li Gen* 30 g and *Shi Jian Chuan* 30 g.

From April 1983 to July 1984, he suffered occasionally from tachycardia and loose stools. The tongue was pale red and tooth-marked, with a thin whitish coating; the pulse was thready and slippery. The therapeutic principle remained

basically the same: tonifying the spleen and supplementing *qi*, discharging toxins and resolving masses.

*Prescription:* Raw sun-dried *Ren Shen* 5 g (decocted separately), *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 20 g, raw *Huang Qi* 20 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, Yunnan *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Shan Yao* 10 g, parched *Shan Zha* 30 g, parched *Shen Qu* 30 g, parched *Mai Ya* 30 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, Sichuan *Bei Mu* 10 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 15 g, wild *Ju Hua* 10 g and *Ma Wei Lian* 10 g.

From January 1985 to 1986, the patient continued to be treated for various ailments including tachycardia and diabetes with a combination of Western and Chinese medicines. Throughout this period the TCM approach of tonifying the spleen and strengthening *qi* remained a basic principle of treatment.

*Last visit:* 25 October 1986 (ten years and two months after cancer surgery)

The condition of the patient was stable. His appetite, urinary and bowel movements were normal, and diagnostic tests did not show anything significantly unusual. As a result, TCM herbal medical treatment was stopped.

The patient survived for another 13 years, finally succumbing to heart disease at the age of 81 and 23 years after surgery for lung cancer. Because of his courage in battling cancer and the success of the combined Western and TCM treatment that he received, he has been held up as a role model and was honoured for successfully combating and overcoming his illness.

## Comments

In the past, some cancer patients resorted to treatment using only TCM because of the fear of surgery and the side effects

of radiotherapy and chemotherapy. That was unfortunate because they deprived themselves of the opportunity to effectively treat their illnesses. In the 1970s when technology was less developed, surgery like exploratory thoracotomy done on the patient in Case 1 might have been needed to discover the complications of the growths in his thorax. But with modern technology such as CT scans, such exploratory surgery is no longer needed. This patient's case was one of advanced non-small cell cancer. What probably contributed to his recovery was the TCM medication that he received one week after surgery, which helped him to recover from surgery but also prepared him for the radiotherapy that followed.

Over the ten years of TCM treatment using herbal medications, I followed the principle on each examination of the patient of differentiating his syndromes as well as identifying any diseases present, and combined treatments for syndromes with those for diseases. We also combined anti-cancer cell treatment with promoting healthy *qi* in his body, as well as the treatment of local areas in the body with holistic healing. Promoting healthy *qi* was based mainly on fortifying the *qi* of his spleen and nourishing the kidney *yin*; combating cancer cells was based on clearing heat and removing toxins, softening and dispersing masses, resolving phlegm and dampness, eliminating blood stasis and reducing swellings.

After radiotherapy, the patient's immune system was weakened as evidenced by the main syndrome of the weakened spleen and kidney. This explained why the herbal prescriptions that he took contained a large component for strengthening *qi* and the kidney to boost his immune system and regulate the lung and spleen functions. The components for combating cancer cells took up only one quarter to one third of the prescription.



The patient also practised *qigong* which helped to balance *yin* and *yang* and promote circulation and build up the immune system. This complemented the herbal medications for building up his body's defences as well as for combating cancer cells. The patient thus received effective treatment of his condition on several fronts, and finally made a satisfactory recovery.

## Case 2

Male, 71 years old, ethnic han, married.

*First visit: 26 September 1997*

*Chief complaint:* Operation for right lung cancer two years ago.

*History of present illness:* Pathologic report after operation in August 1995 showed adenocarcinoma, T<sub>1</sub>N<sub>0</sub>M<sub>0</sub>. One cycle of chemotherapy began one week after the operation; no radiotherapy was administered. The patient also took TCM herbal decoctions for rehabilitation. Recently, he often suffered from cough with white sputum and chest pain. Urination and defecation appeared normal.

*Past medical history:* Hypertension for several years, controlled with drugs; relatively stable.

*Tongue and pulse manifestation:* Dark tongue with whitish coating. The pulse was taut and slippery.

*Diagnosis of TCM:* Lung masses.

*Differentiation of syndromes:* Deficiency of both *qi* and *yin*; accumulation of lung heat.

*Methods and principles of therapy:* Supplementing *qi* and nourishing *yin*; clearing away heat and toxic materials; dispersing phlegm and relieving cough.

*Prescription:* Raw Huang Qi 30 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Jie Geng 10 g, Qian Hu 10 g, Pi Pa Ye 10 g, Bai He 10 g, Long Kui 10 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 20 g, Cao He Che 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g, Zhejiang Bei Mu 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Hangzhou Bai Shao 20 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Bai Bu 10 g (one dose daily).

*Subsequent visit: 6 February 1998*

Frequent cough with white sputum. The tongue had a whitish coating while the pulse was deep, thready and fast. The same therapeutic approach as before was used with the following modifications: added Wu Wei Zi 6 g, Sang Bai Pi 10 g, Yu Xing Cao 30 g, Bai Ying 15 g and She Mei 15 g and removed Jie Geng, Qian Hu, Pi Pa Ye, Bai Bu, Bai He, Cao He Che and Hangzhou Bai Shao.

*Subsequent visit: 3 September 1998*

Cough with shortness of breath and white lumpy sputum. The tongue was dark red with petechiae while the root had yellow greasy fur. The pulse was thready, taut and slippery.

*Prescription:* Fei Ji capsules (肺积胶囊) and Xian Cao pills (仙草丹) and the following decoction: Qian Hu 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Wu Wei Zi 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, Shi Jian Chuan 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, parched Shan Zha 10 g, parched Shen Qu 10 g, parched Mai Ya 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g and Gou Qi Zi 10 g.

*Subsequent visit: 25 December 1998*

Dry mouth at night, cough with thick white sputum which was difficult to expectorate. Appetite was good but sleep poor; urination and defecation normal; the tongue dark red with petechiae, root yellowish. The pulse was thready and

taut. The syndrome was differentiated as deficiency of both *qi* and *yin*; heat toxicity and blood stasis. The methods and principles of therapy were supplementing *qi* and nourishing *yin*, detoxification and removing stasis.

*Prescription:* Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Shi Jian Chuan 15 g, Gui Jian Yu 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Yu Xing Cao 30 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g and Wu Wei Zi 10 g.

*Subsequent visit:* 26 February 1999

The patient caught a cold and had a cough with white sputum, running nose and a dull ache in the upper part of the body. His appetite was good while sleep was poor. The stools were a little bit loose. The tongue was dark red with petechiae; its root had yellow-white greasy fur; the pulse was deep, taut and slippery. Modified *Er Chen* Decoction (二陈汤) was used to strengthen the spleen and harmonize the middle abdomen, detoxify and promote blood flow.

*Prescription:* Bai Zhu 10 g, Chen Pi 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Ban Xia 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, parched Shan Zha 10 g, parched Shen Qu 10 g, parched Mai Ya 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g, raw Yi Yi Ren 15 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Dan Shen 15 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g and Gou Qi Zi 10 g.

*Date of visit:* 24 September 1999

The patient's condition was normal except for a bit of coughing and slightly elevated blood pressure. The tongue was dark red with petechiae; the root of it had a white coating. The pulse was deep and taut. The method of therapy was modified to supplementing *qi* and tonifying the kidney; detoxicating and activating blood flow.

*Prescription:* Raw Huang Qi 30 g, Dan Shen 15 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Chi Shao 15 g, Chuan Xiong 15 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Du Zhong 10 g, Tian Ma 10 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Sha Ren 10 g, parched Shan Zha 10 g, parched Shen Qu 10 g and parched Mai Ya 10 g.

*Subsequent visit:* 28 January 2000

Dry mouth and nose, cough with much sputum. The tongue was dark red with petechiae and a thin white coating. The pulse was thin, slippery and string-like.

*Prescription:* Qian Hu 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g, Zi Wan 10 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, parched Shan Zha 10 g, parched Shen Qu 10 g, parched Mai Ya 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g and Zhi Qiao 10 g. Continued with *Fei Ji* capsules and *Xian Cao* pills.

*Subsequent visit:* 9 August 2002

More than six years after the operation for right upper lobe cancer, the sputum was white and sticky with less coughing; appetite, urination and defecation were normal; the tongue was pale and darkish with a thin whitish coating; the pulse was thready and slippery.

*Prescription:* Qian Hu 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Sichuan Bei Mu 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Dan Shen 15 g, Chuan Xiong 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, parched Shan Zha 10 g, parched Shen Qu 10 g, parched Mai Ya 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g and Cao He Che 15 g.

*Subsequent visit:* 30 January 2004

More than eight years after surgery, the patient had no coughing but there was a bit of sputum. The tongue was dark red

with petechiae and a white coating. The pulse was deep, thready and taut.

*Prescription:* Raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g, *Xing Ren* 10 g, *Sichuan Bei Mu* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Shi Shang Bai* 15 g, *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Dan Shen* 15 g, parched *Shan Zha* 10 g, parched *Shen Qu* 10 g, parched *Mai Ya* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g and *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g.

*Subsequent visit: 2 April 2004*

The patient had an infection on his left foot for the recent two weeks which was resolved after treatment. He had a good appetite but poor sleep; dry stools and frequent urination at night. The tongue was dark red with petechiae and a white coating; the pulse was deep, thready and taut.

*Prescription:* *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Fu Pen Zi* 10 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Dan Shen* 15 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 15 g, parched *Shan Zha* 10 g, parched *Shen Qu* 10 g, parched *Mai Ya* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g and *Sichuan Bei Mu* 10 g. Continued with *Fei Ji* capsules.

From then on, the patient insisted on TCM rehabilitation. The core combination of the prescription was similar to the previous one. With ageing, some geriatric symptoms emerged, such as fluctuation of blood pressure (a little above the normal level sometimes) and frequent urination. These symptoms were due to the deficiency of kidney *qi*. The tongue was dark red with petechiae. The following prescription was used since July 2004: *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g, *Sha Shen* 30 g, raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Dan Shen* 15 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Tu Si Zi* 10 g, *Fu Pen*

*Zi* 10 g, parched *Shan Zha* 10 g, parched *Shen Qu* 10 g, parched *Mai Ya* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g and Zhejiang *Bei Mu* 10 g.

The next visit took place in January 2006. The patient continued with the TCM herbal decoction with three doses per week. The principle remained that of supplementing *qi* and tonifying the kidney; detoxicating and activating blood flow. More than ten years had passed since the operation was carried out. He was fine and in good spirits, and had a good appetite. Although in his eighties, he still participated in work and social activities.

## Comments

This patient had early-stage lung cancer, in principle not requiring post-operative Western medical treatment. However, the patient insisted on using TCM for rehabilitation after surgery, with a view to preventing a recurrence of the illness and improving his life quality. During the period of therapy, the herbal prescription was modified according to the syndromes and with the purpose of prevention. The methods and principles of therapy — supplementing *qi* and tonifying the kidney, detoxicating and activating blood flow — could also delay ageing and prevent premature senility, and the patient was committed to maintaining this kind of health therapy. Apart from the daily decoctions, *Fei Ji* capsules were used to strengthen healthy *qi* and resist cancer, and *Xian Cao* pills (made by the Beijing Hospital of TCM) to supplement *qi* and consolidate the kidney for better body resistance. The patient's chance of survival was enhanced and his life span increased.

### Case 3

Female, 46 years old, ethnic han, married.

*First visit:* 1 June 2004

*Chief complaint:* Lesion in right lung discovered four months ago; brain metastasis. Western medical diagnosis: Right lung adenocarcinoma with brain metastasis.

*History of present illness:* The patient experienced breathing difficulties. CT scan in January 2004 found a space-occupying lesion in the right lung, with brain metastasis. Bronchoscopy showed medium-low differentiated adenocarcinoma. Brain radiotherapy was administered 20 times, with the total dose reaching 4000 cGy. The drug Iressa was used for nearly three months from February 2004. CT scan showed that the lesion diminished by April.

*Present symptoms:* The symptoms were alleviated after radiotherapy and chemotherapy. The patient felt fullness at the middle and upper parts of the oesophagus and difficulty in expectoration; had dryness of the throat; was not eating and sleeping well; and had normal bowel and urinary functions. There was a mild delay in menstruation.

*Past medical history:* No chronic disease or infectious disease.

*TCM diagnosis:* Dark red tongue with white thin fur; deep, thready and taut pulse.

*Syndrome differentiation:* Qi and yin deficiency with phlegm and accumulation of toxins.

*Method of treatment:* Replenishing qi and nourishing yin, clearing phlegm and toxins.

*Prescription:* Sha Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Wu Wei Zi 10 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Dan Pi 12 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Bai Xian Pi 10 g, Shan Yu

Rou 10 g, Jie Geng 10 g, raw Gan Cao 6 g, fried Zao Ren 20 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g and Quan Xie 3 g.

*Second visit: 4 September 2004*

*Present condition:* The patient had a sore throat, with a little white phlegm; was eating and sleeping well; had normal bowel movements and urination; and had a dark tongue with white thin fur and a deep, thready and weak pulse.

*Prescription:* Fu Ling 10 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Dan Pi 12 g, Bai Xian Pi 12 g, Che Qian Cao 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Mai Dong 15 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g and Ji Nei Jin 10 g.

*Third visit: 19 October 2004*

*Present condition:* The patient had itchy skin, sore throat, irregular menstruation for the last two to three months, fatigue and no coughing. She was sleeping well, had normal bowel movements and urination, and mouth ulcers. The tongue was dark with petechiae and white fur; the pulse was deep, thready and weak.

*Prescription:* Sha Shen 30 g, Shu Di 12 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Shan Yao 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Dan Pi 12 g, Ze Xie 10 g, fried Zhi Mu 10 g, fried Huang Bai 10 g, Bai Xian Pi 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Cao He Che 15 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Sha Ren 10 g.

*Fourth visit: 7 December 2004*

*Present condition:* The patient's diarrhoea and skin eczema were improving; her menses stopped for three months; she had no coughing, occasional oral ulcers, and was thirsty



especially at night. She was eating well, with normal bowel movements. The tongue was dark red with white thin fur; the pulse was deep and thready.

*Prescription:* Sha Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Bai Xian Pi 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Xia Ku Cao 15 g, Zhe Bei 10 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Wu Gong 1 piece, Jie Geng 10 g and raw Gan Cao 6 g.

*Fifth visit: 11 January 2005*

*Present condition:* The ALT a little higher than the normal level; regular menstruation returned after taking the herbal medicine. The patient was eating and sleeping well, with normal bowel movements and urination. The tongue was dark red with thin white fur; the pulse was deep and thready.

*Prescription:* Yin Chen 10 g, Jiang Huang 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Jie Geng 10 g, Zhe Bei 10 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Wu Gong 1 piece and Zhu Ru 10 g.

*Sixth visit: 23 February 2005*

*Present condition:* The patient had dry itchy skin; she was eating and sleeping well, with normal bowel movements and urination, and normal menstruation. The tongue was dark with thin white fur; the pulse was deep, thready and weak.

*Prescription:* Yin Chen 15 g, Jiang Huang 12 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Bai Xian Pi 10 g, Dan Pi 12 g, Zhe Bei 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, Chi Shao 10 g, Ju Hong 10 g, Xing Ren 10 g,

charred *Shan Zha* 10 g, charred *Mai Ya* 10 g, charred *Shen Qu* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Di Fu Zi* 10 g and fried *Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Seventh visit: 12 April 2005*

*Present condition:* The patient was in stable condition; her skin was less dry and itchy; she had a little rash on the face and nose. She was eating and sleeping well, with a tendency for diarrhoea after eating raw and cold foods; she had normal bowel movements and urination, and normal menstruation. The tongue was dark with white thin fur; the pulse was deep, thready and weak.

*Prescription:* *Yin Chen* 15 g, *Jiang Huang* 12 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 10 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Bai Xian Pi* 10 g, *Zhe Bei* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, charred *Shan Zha* 10 g, charred *Mai Ya* 10 g, charred *Shen Qu* 10 g, *Chen Pi* 10 g, *Ban Xia* 9 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Di Fu Zi* 10 g and fried *Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Eighth visit: 22 June 2006*

*Present condition:* The patient was eating and sleeping well, with an aversion to greasy food and some loss of taste. The tongue was dark with petechiae and white thin fur; the pulse was deep and thready.

*Prescription:* *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Xian Ling Pi* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Zhi Qiao* 10 g, charred *Shan Zha* 10 g, charred *Mai Ya* 10 g, charred *Shen Qu* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, fried *Zao Ren* 20 g and *Shou Wu Teng* 30 g.

*Ninth visit: 13 July 2006*

*Present condition:* Similar to eighth visit, with some loose stools.

*Prescription: Tai Zi Shen 30 g, raw Huang Qi 30 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Zhi Qiao 10 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Xian Ling Pi 10 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Bai Xian Pi 10 g, Sha Shen 30 g, fried Zao Ren 20 g, Shou Wu Teng 30 g, charred Shan Zha 10 g, charred Mai Ya 10 g, charred Shen Qu 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Jie Geng 10 g and raw Gan Cao 6 g.*

## **Comments**

This is a case of lung adenocarcinoma with brain metastasis, classified as non-small cell lung cancer. The patient received only palliative brain radiotherapy with no chemotherapy. Only the drug Iressa and Chinese herbal medicine were used, and this stabilized the patient's condition. Iressa is effective in the treatment of non-small cell lung cancer, with possible side effects of diarrhoea and skin rash, which Chinese herbal medicine can help alleviate. The patient was diagnosed as having *qi* and *yin* deficiency with phlegm and toxin aggregation. *Sha Shen, Mai Dong, Tai Zi Shen, Bai Zhu, raw Huang Qi, Fu Ling, Wu Wei Zi, Gou Qi Zi, Nü Zhen Zi, Tian Hua Fen* and *Shan Yu Rou* can replenish *qi*, nourish *yin* and strengthen healthy *qi*; *Xia Ku Cao, Bei Mu, Jie Geng* and *Cao He Che* can remove phlegm and masses; *Ji Xue Teng* can promote blood circulation and remove obstruction in channels; *Quan Xie* and *Wu Gong* can calm wind and relieve convulsions and are especially good for brain metastasis; and *Dan Pi, Bai Xian Pi* and *Di Fu Zi* can cool blood and clear the skin to deal with the side effects of Iressa on skin, which helped the patient to survive for more than two years after brain metastasis.

## 5.2. Breast Cancer

In breast cancer the endothelial cells of the lacteal gland duct lose their normal character and become incapable of self-repair. The main clinical manifestation is a lacteal gland tumour. Breast cancer tumours generally tend to develop slowly.

Breast cancer is among the most commonly occurring form of malignant tumour in women. Its incidence and mortality rate vary widely across different regions in the world, and historically have been higher in Europe and America than in Africa, Latin America and Asia.

In China, the incidence of breast cancer in the cities is increasing rapidly and approaching the Western rate, being higher in Shanghai, Beijing and Tianjin, with Shanghai topping the list. Research has shown that this increasing incidence of breast cancer is related to higher incomes and an increase in the intake of foods high in fats, later age at first pregnancy and the declining practice of breast-feeding.

The Chinese medical classics mentioned breast cancer from early historical times. In AD 610, Chao Yuanfang of the Sui dynasty mentioned *shiyong* (石癩) in his *Treatise on the Pathogenesis and Manifestations of All Diseases*, describing it as a tumour that “can be felt definitely, with a root. The core and the surface are closely bonded, with slight pain but without heat. It is as hard as a stone”. In the Song dynasty, Chen Ziming discussed the differences between *ruyong* (breast carbuncle) and *ruyan* (breast tumour) in *The Compendium of Effective Prescriptions for Women* (AD 1237). In the Yuan dynasty, Zhu Danxi mentioned in *Gezhi yulun* (*An Inquiry into the Properties of Things*) (1347) that “the accumulation of depression or anger consumes spleen *qi*, and thus liver *qi* cannot be controlled and is reversed upward to form a tumour like a big chess piece, without pain or itching”.

On the aetiology and pathogenesis of breast cancer, classical Chinese medical literature differentiates between external and internal factors. On external factors, the *Treatise on the Pathogenesis and Manifestations of All Diseases* mentions that the disease “happens in patients with weak constitutions attacked by the pathogens of wind and cold, leading to blood stasis”. As for internal factors, much of the classical literature cites emotional factors, specifically liver depression with *qi* stagnation harming the spleen, leading to disorders of *qi* and blood circulation and of the *zang-fu* organ functions. The disease was also observed to occur mainly among middle-aged women with depression or accumulated anger (Yu Bo, *Orthodox Manual of Medicine*). This is consistent with the statistics on breast cancer gathered from Western clinical records indicating emotional factors as an underlying cause of the disease.

### 5.2.1. Treatment of breast cancer

The treatment plan for breast cancer should be in accordance with the clinical stage of the disease, TCM differentiation of syndromes, and the patient’s constitution. Combining radiotherapy, chemotherapy and endocrine therapy with TCM treatment often gets the best results for prolonging and improving the quality of life of the patient.

After surgery for breast cancer, the main TCM syndrome manifestations are *qi* and blood deficiency and imbalances in the spleen and stomach. TCM treatment should be applied to replenish *qi* and nourish blood, and to regulate the spleen and stomach. Herbs such as *Sheng Huang Qi*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Ji Xue Teng*, *Bai Zhu*, *Fu Ling*, *Ji Nei Jin*, *Sha Ren* and *Mu Xiang* can be used.

Patients during chemotherapy may experience fatigue, nausea, poor appetite and low white blood cell count; the tongue is

pale red or slightly dark, with thin white or yellowish fur; the pulse is thready and rapid or taut. For patients with *qi* deficiency and blood stasis and spleen and kidney deficiency, we should replenish *qi* and activate blood, replenish the spleen and tonify the kidney. *Sheng Xue Tang Jia Wei* (Modified *Sheng Xue* Decoction) (生血汤加味) can be applied. The specific drugs used are as follows: raw *Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 10 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Sheng Shan Yao* 15 g, *Ju Pi* 10 g, *Zhu Ru* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g and *Zhi Gan Cao* 6 g. In this formulation, *Huang Qi*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Bai Zhu*, *Fu Ling* and *Zhi Gan Cao* can replenish the spleen and tonify *qi*; *Ji Xue Teng* can promote blood circulation; *Ju Pi* and *Zhu Ru* can alleviate nausea; *Nü Zhen Zi*, *Gou Qi Zi* and *Sheng Shan Yao* tonify the kidney; and *Ji Nei Jin* and *Jiao San Xian* improve the appetite.

Variations on the prescription: add *Ban Xia* 10 g to stop nausea; add *Zi He Che* 10 g if there is anaemia or weakening of the blood functions; add *Qian Cao* 15 g and 6 pieces of *Da Zao* when blood platelet count is low; add *Xian Ling Pi* 10 g when the immune function is weakened.

Patients during radiotherapy may suffer from lassitude, dryness and bitterness in the mouth, poor appetite, and reduced white blood cell count. The tongue is dark or purple with thin or no fur; the pulse is thready and rapid or thready and wiry. These are symptoms of *qi* and *yin* deficiency. We should replenish *qi* and nourish *yin* and apply the following herbs: *Bei Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Shi Hu* 10 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Dang Gui* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 10 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Sheng Shan Yao* 15 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g and *Zhi Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Bei Sha Shen*, *Mai Dong* and *Shi Hu* nourish *yin*; *Dang Gui* nourishes the blood; *Sheng Huang Qi*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Bai Zhu*, *Fu*

*Ling* and *Zhi Gan Cao* strengthen the spleen and tonify *qi*; *Ji Xue Teng* promotes blood circulation; *Nü Zhen Zi*, *Gou Qi Zi* and *Sheng Shan Yao* tonify the kidney; and *Ji Nei Jin* and *Jiao San Xian* promote digestion. If skin problems appear during radiotherapy, external medicine *Hei Jiang Dan* formulated by the Beijing Hospital of TCM may be used.

The main TCM syndromes seen in breast cancer patients are liver depression with *qi* stagnation, *chong* meridian and *ren* meridian disorder (冲任经络失调) and the accumulation of heat toxins.

For liver depression with *qi* stagnation, a condition often related to emotional stress, the patient feels swelling and pain in the breasts and sides of the thorax, irritability, a bitter taste in the mouth, dry throat, dizziness and blurred vision; the tongue fur is thin and white or yellowish; the pulse is taut and slippery. These indicate stagnation of liver *qi* and phlegm coagulation. The therapeutic approach for such a condition is soothing the liver and regulating *qi*, dissipating phlegm and dispersing accumulations. A suitable prescription comprises *Chai Hu* 10 g, *Qing Pi* 10 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Ju Ye* 10 g, *Dang Gui* 10 g, *Bai Shao* 10 g, *Yun Ling* 10 g, *Gua Lou* 30 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Shan Ci Gu* 15 g, *Bai Zhi* 10 g.

Because the breasts are located in the chest through which the liver meridian passes, when the liver fails in its basic function to facilitate *qi* flow, symptoms appear in the form of distension and pain in the breasts and sides of the thorax, characteristic of liver depression. Liver depression with spleen deficiency causes phlegm and turbid *qi* accumulation in the body with *qi* stagnation and blood stasis in the breasts. *Chai Hu*, *Qing Pi*, *Yu Jin* and *Ju Ye* soothe the liver and regulate *qi*; *Dang Gui* and *Bai Shao* nourish the blood and liver; *Gua Lou*, *Shan Ci Gu* and *Bai Zhi* dissipate phlegm and disperse accumulations; and *Yun Ling* and *Bai Zhu* strengthen the spleen and remove dampness.

In the case of *chong* and *ren* meridian disorders, the main symptoms are those for liver *qi* stagnation enumerated earlier, but there is also the possibility of irregular menstruation, soreness and weakness in the lower back and knee, a feverish sensation in the palms of the hands, soles of the feet and chest, irritation in the eyes and a dry mouth. The therapeutic approach is to regulate the two meridians, and nourish the liver and kidney. A suitable prescription would comprise the following: *Xiang Fu* 10 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10 g, *Dang Gui* 12 g, *Sheng Shu Di* 15 g each, *Bai Shao* 15 g, *Chuan Xiong* 10 g, *Ju Ye* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 10 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 15 g, *Sheng Shan Yao* 15 g, *Ye Ju Hua* 15 g and *Gua Lou* 30 g.

Liver depression transforms stagnant *qi* into fire, which consumes body fluids and causes liver and kidney *yin* deficiency, which in turn leads to the disorder of the *chong* and *ren* meridians. *Dang Gui*, *Sheng Shu Di*, *Bai Shao*, *Chuan Xiong*, *Nü Zhen Zi* and *Gou Qi Zi* nourish *yin* and blood, tonify the kidney and regulate menstruation; *Xiang Fu*, *Yu Jin*, *Chuan Lian Zi* and *Ju Ye* soothe the liver and regulate *qi*; *Sheng Shan Yao* replenishes the spleen; *Ye Ju Hua* and *Gua Lou* remove toxins and disperse accumulations.

Finally, for the heat toxin accumulation syndrome, the main symptoms are rapid growth in the breast tumour with pain, sometimes accompanied by redness and swelling and even ulcerations with pus and a foul odour. *Qi* and blood are damaged with serious loss of healthy *qi*, manifesting as pallor and anaemia, weight loss, fatigue, feverishness and irritability, constipation, dry eyes and mouth, yellow-white or yellowish and greasy tongue fur, and a taut and slippery or taut and rapid pulse. The TCM therapeutic approach is to resolve toxins, improve blood circulation, and strengthen vital (healthy) *qi*. An appropriate prescription comprises *Mao Zhua Cao* 30 g, *Shan Ci Gu* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g,



*Liu Ji Nu* 10 g, *Feng Fang* 10 g, *Pu Gong Ying* 30 g, *Quan Gua Lou* 30 g, *Sheng Di Huang* 15 g, *Xuan Shen* 12 g, *Dang Gui* 10 g, *Fu Rong Ye* 20 g and *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g.

In advanced stages of cancer, deficiency of healthy *qi* co-exists with exuberance of pathogens. Thus, the treatment should reinforce vital (healthy) *qi* and dissipate pathogenic factors. We can use herbs that clear heat, relieve toxins, activate blood and dissipate stagnation. Meanwhile, we should reinforce vital *qi* especially when the tumour is ulcerated. We can tonify *qi* and nourish blood using such herbs as *Sheng Huang Qi*, *Sheng Di Huang* and *Dang Gui*, and prescriptions like *Gui Pi Tang*, *Xiang Bei Yang Rong Tang* and *Shi Quan Da Bu Tang*. The main therapeutic effect is that of tonifying *qi* and nourishing blood, with removing toxins and dissipating nodes playing a supplementary role.

Overall, the herbs commonly used to treat various syndromes associated with breast cancer are *Bai Ying*, *Pu Gong Ying*, *Long Kui*, *Tu Fu Ling*, *Ban Zhi Lian*, *She Mei*, *Xian Ren Zhang*, *Feng Fang*, *Ban Mao*, *Shan Dou Gen*, *Shan Ci Gu*, *Zhu Yang Yang*, *Tian Kui Zi*, *Lian Qiao*, *Zao Xiu*, *Fu Rong Hua*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, *Zi Cao*, *Xia Ku Cao*, *Qing Pi*, *Gou Ju Li*, *Ze Lan*, *Liu Xing Zi*, *Zao Jiao Ci*, *Chuan Shan Jia*, *Xie Ke*, *Tian Men Dong*, *Xue Li Guo*, *Tian Hua Fen*, *Chuan Lian Zi*, *Ai Ye*, *Lou Lü*, *Tu Bei Mu*, *Ye Pu Tao Gen*, *Sheng Nan Xing*, *Sheng Ban Xia*, *Jiang Can*, *Sha Yuan Zi*, *Lao Ling Ke* and *Chou Chun Pi Gen*.

*Fu Xiao Mai* may be added when spontaneous sweating occurs; *Luo Shi Teng*, *Sang Zhi* and *Lu Lu Tong* when swelling appears in the arms; *Da Huang* and *Bai Zi Ren* for patients with constipation; *Ye Jiao Teng* and *Chao Zao Ren* for patients with poor sleep; *Chai Hu*, *Chi Shao*, *Yin Chen* and *Jiang Huang* if there are liver function disorders; and *Cao Jue Ming*, *Yin Chen* and *Ze Xie* for patients with fatty liver and obesity due to long-term use of tamoxifen.

## Case 1

Female, 75 years old, ethnic han, married.

*First visit: 6 June 1966*

*History of present illness:* Tumour in the right breast, measuring 2.5 cm; histological examination proved it to be breast cancer. The patient had other chronic diseases such as hypertension, cardiac disease, hip joint problem and poor vision. She was not suitable for surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy. She was given tamoxifen 10 mg, twice a day.

*Symptoms:* Frequent and painful urination; red tongue tip; deep, thready and weak pulse.

*Syndrome differentiation:* Liver depression and *qi* stagnation, accumulation of phlegm and toxins.

*TCM principle for treatment:* Soothing the liver *qi*, strengthening the spleen, resolving phlegm and toxins.

*Prescription:* *Cu Chai Hu* 10 g, *Shan Ci Gu* 15 g, *Sheng Mu Li* 30 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Wang Bu Liu Xing* 10 g, *Chi Shao* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Du Zhong* 10 g, *Bai Hua She* 30 g, *Shan Yao* 30 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Wu Yao* 10 g, *Qu Mai* 15 g, *Qian Hu* 10 g and *Pu Gong Ying* 15 g.

*Visit three months later:* Pain in the right breast was reduced; urination and appetite were improved; pale red tongue with thin white fur; deep, thready and wiry pulse.

The prescription was modified to *Xiang Fu* 10 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Bei Sha Shen* 30 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Shan Ci Gu* 15 g, *Sheng Mu Li* 30 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Chi Shao* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Du Zhong* 10 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 15 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Pu Gong Ying* 15 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g and *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g.

After three months of using the previous prescription, the patient's health improved. The patient occasionally felt pain in the chest, had good appetite and slept well, had normal bowel movements, and had a red tongue with yellow fur and a thready and slippery pulse.

*Prescription: Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Chuan Xiong 10 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Chuan Lian Zi 10 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Huang Qin 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Sha Yuan Zi 10 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Pu Gong Ying 15 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Wu Wei Zi 10 g, Bai Ying 15 g and Jiao San Xian 10 g each.*

After four months of using the previous prescription, the patient underwent a comprehensive check-up. The following was observed: thinning of the cortex for both kidneys, fatty liver, multiple cysts in the liver, a red tongue with thin yellow fur, and a deep and thready pulse. The patient felt no pain in the breast. The prescription was modified to *Shan Ci Gu 15 g, Sheng Mu Li 30 g, Xia Ku Cao 15 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Pao Shan Jia 10 g, Chi Shao 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Du Zhong 10 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Bai Ying 20 g, Long Kui 15 g and Pu Gong Ying 15 g.*

After seven months of using the previous prescription, no tumour in the right breast was found. After another eight months' treatment, a tumour in the right breast was detected; this was confirmed by examinations conducted in several other hospitals. TCM treatment continued; after two years on the prescription, no recurrence occurred.

## Comments

This is a case of an elderly woman with a clear diagnosis of right breast cancer in the post-menopausal period. Given the

condition of the patient, neither surgery, radiotherapy nor chemotherapy was used. Western treatment applied tamoxifen, whilst TCM treatment used soothing the liver, regulating *qi*, clearing heat and toxins, softening of accumulations and tonifying *qi* based on syndrome differentiation. The matching of the herbs to the syndromes helped to achieve satisfactory results, with no pain or symptoms of a breast tumour four years after a tumour had been diagnosed.

## Case 2

Female, 63 years old, ethnic han, married, retired.

*First visit: 17 June 2004*

*Main complaint:* Three years after modified radical mastectomy in 2001, there were papillary adenocarcinoma, many vascular cancerous embolisms and 6/16 lymphatic node metastasis. Immunohistochemical analysis showed ER-, PR-, HER-2 +++.

*Treatment history:* The patient received modified radical mastectomy in June 2001. Radiotherapy was applied for three weeks after operation for a total of 25 times, then TAT+EPI chemotherapy for three weeks, without using tamoxifen. Recently, left-sided superclavicle lymph node metastasis was found, and local radiotherapy was applied 30 times.

*Present symptoms:* Distension and pain in the stomach; bitterness in the mouth; dryness in the throat; poor appetite; belching; occasional irritability; red tongue with yellow fur; and thin and taut pulse.

*Western medical diagnosis:* Lymph node metastasis; bone metastasis after breast cancer operation; fatty liver.

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* Disharmony of the liver and stomach, blood stasis and accumulation of toxins.

*Principle for treatment:* Soothing the liver and regulating the stomach, nourishing *yin* and detoxification.

*Prescription:* *Xuan Fu Hua* 10 g, *Dai Zhe Shi* 15 g, *Zhi Ke* 10 g, *Hou Po* 10 g, *Chai Hu* 10 g, *Chi Shao* 10 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Ju Hua* 10 g, *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 15 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *She Mei* 15 g and *Chao Zao Ren* 20 g.

*Next visit:* 30 June 2004

Symptoms generally improved; appetite continued to be poor; spontaneous sweating; dark tongue with signs of blood stasis and thin, yellowish fur; thready and wiry pulse.

The prescription was modified: *Tian Hua Fen*, *Mai Dong* and *Ju Hua* were substituted with *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Fang Feng* 10 g and *Fu Xiao Mai* 30 g.

*Next visit:* 16 September 2004

*Symptoms:* Loose stools; poor sleep; belching; better appetite; darkish tongue with signs of blood stasis and whitish and yellow greasy fur; thin, slippery and rapid pulse.

*Prescription:* *Xuan Fu Hua* 10 g, *Dai Zhu Shi* 15 g, *Chai Hu* 10 g, *Ze Xie* 15 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10 g, *Chi Shao* 10 g, *Yin Chen* 15 g, *Cao Jue Ming* 15 g, *Huo Xiang* 10 g, *Zhi Zi* 10 g, *Zhi Ke* 10 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *She Mei* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each and *Sha Ren* 10 g.

*Next visit:* 8 December 2004

*Symptoms:* Stomach discomfort and belching reduced, stools normal, distension and pain in the hepatic region, poor sleep quality.

*Prescription:* *Yuan Hu* 15 g and *Sha Yuan Zi* 10 g were added to the previous prescription.

During two further visits in February 2005, metastasis was found in the lymph nodes. The TCM prescription was modified to deal with this, and further adjustments were made in May and September 2005.

*Next visit: 9 October 2005*

There was no obvious change in the lymph nodes above the left collarbone.

*Symptoms:* General conditions were good; light red tongue with tooth indentations and thin white fur; deep and wiry pulse. Damp-heat and stagnation symptoms were alleviated.

*Prescription:* *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 20 g, *Dang Shen* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Chi Bai Shao* 10 g each, *Zhe Bei Mu* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *She Mei* 15 g, *Dan Pi* 10 g, *Chao Zao Ren* 20 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g and *Sha Ren* 10 g.

*Next visit: 3 December 2005*

*Symptoms:* Fatigue; dry throat; pale reddish tongue with thin white fur; deep, thready and weak pulse. Examination showed lymph nodes present in the sternal region, the largest being 1.1 cm × 0.75 cm.

*Prescription:* *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Dang Shen* 10 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 20 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Mai Dong* 10 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *She Mei* 15 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Hai Zao* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Sha Yuan Zi* 10 g can add *Xi Huang Jiao Nan* (capsules).

*Next visit: 18 March 2006*

PET examination showed that nodes had formed (1.2 cm × 0.8 cm) in the suprasternal fossa, with possible metastasis; B-ultrasound showed lymph nodes in the suprasternal fossa (1.2 cm × 0.8 cm); radiotherapy and chemotherapy being considered by the Western doctor.

*Prescription: Sha Shen 30 g, Chuan Bei 10 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Ju Ye 10 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 20 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Ban Zhi Lian 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Long Kui 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Bei Dou Gen 6 g, Sha Yuan Zi 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Yuan Hu 15 g, Chao Zao Ren 20 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Sha Ren 10 g.*

*Next visit: 26 April 2006*

Chemotherapy was started using CDDP, Navelbine and Herceptin. TCM treatment continued concurrently with chemotherapy.

*Prescription: Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 20 g, Dang Shen 10 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Zi He Che 10 g, Ci Wu Jia 15 g, Sha Ren 10 g and Da Zao 6 g.*

*Next visit: 14 June 2006*

Right supraclavicular lymph node metastasis, about 0.5 cm × 0.13 cm.

*Symptoms:* Abdominal distension, nausea and vomiting, loss of taste, dry stools, normal urination.

*Prescription: Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Zhe Bei Mu 10 g, Shan Yu Rou 10 g, Zi He Che 10 g, Ju Pi 10 g, Zhu Ru 10 g, Ban Xia 10 g, Ci Wu Jia 15 g, Chao Zao Ren 20 g, Sha Shen 20 g, Sha Yuan Zi 10 g, Dan Shen 15 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Dang Shen 15 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Tu Si Zi 10 g, Jiao San*

*Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Zhi Ke* 10 g and *Hou Po Hua* 10 g.

## Comments

Although the tumour was resected, there was extensive lymph node metastasis (16/16). Immunohistochemical analysis showed strong positive *c-erbB2* (+++). This case of breast cancer was vulnerable to metastasis which first showed up some three years after surgery. This could suggest that combining TCM treatment with radiotherapy and chemotherapy played a role in controlling metastasis.

Differentiation of syndromes indicated the use of different herbs and formulas to treat the TCM condition. Differentiation of diseases indicated treatment of the breast cancer according to specific characters of this disease by the Western medical approach. It was possible to improve the overall therapeutic results by combining differentiation of syndromes with differentiation of diseases.

Chemotherapy using Herceptin can have adverse effects such as fatigue, general pain, cough, digestive problems, rash, depression, insomnia, cough or asthma. TCM syndrome differentiation was used to reinforce vital *qi* to alleviate these side effects. This had the benefits of regulating *qi* and blood, balancing the five organs, tonifying and reinforcing vital *qi*, and dispersing toxins and pathogens. The patient's immune system was strengthened and quality of life improved, with a delay in the progression of metastasis.

In the course of dealing with this case, we made the useful discovery that the following prescription can be applied to treat fatty liver: *Yin Chen*, *Cao Jue Ming* and *Ze Xie*. The three herbs proved to be effective in reducing liver lipid levels.



### 5.3. Liver Cancer

Liver cancer consists of primary liver cancer and secondary liver cancer, also known as metastatic liver cancer. The latter occurs as a result of the spread of primary cancer from another location. Henceforth we use the term “liver cancer” to refer to primary hepatic cancer. This is one of the most common malignant tumours in China and other countries. Owing to their slow and insidious onset, most cases are not diagnosed until the middle or late stages when prognosis tends to be poorer.

In China, the mortality rate for liver cancer in urban areas ranks third, after lung cancer and gastric cancer, whilst in rural districts it is the second highest, after gastric cancer. Over 110,000 people die of the disease annually in China, accounting for over 40% of the total deaths worldwide from the disease. The incidence of the disease is particularly high in the north-east coastal provinces.

In classical Chinese medical literature, symptoms such as pain in the right trunk region near the liver, lumps, jaundice and bleeding typical of liver cancer are extensively recorded. From the TCM point of view, the primary pathogenic factors that contribute to liver cancer are the attack of exogenous cold, dampness and heat dampness combined with internal deficiencies of the spleen and stomach caused by improper diet; or depressed emotions cause stagnation of liver *qi* and and blood stasis, resulting in accumulation into a tumour; or spleen *yang* is suppressed by dampness, transforming into heat and resulting in jaundice. In sum, the pathogenesis of liver cancer comprises internal deficiencies of *qi* and blood, spleen deficiency with dampness, *qi* stagnation and blood stasis as well as attacks of external climatic pathogens and toxins invading the body, whose deficiencies cause it to succumb to the invasion and develop tumours as a result.

Epidemiological studies suggest that in regions with a high incidence of liver cancer, viruses and chemical carcinogens are additional external predisposing factors for the disease. Studies show that there is a close link between hepatic cancer and incidence of acute viral hepatitis; acute viral hepatitis can lead to chronic liver conditions and bring about liver cirrhosis which later transforms into cancer.

Among carcinogens, aflatoxin has been found to have high potency for inducing liver cancer. It can be found in peanuts, corn and other grains that have developed mildew. In addition, *Aspergillus* toxins, islandicin and luteoskyrin have been found to induce liver cancer in laboratory animals. Nitrosamines in certain foods are also thought to be carcinogenic.

Generally, the presence of external factors is a condition for the development of liver cancers, but the host body has to have inherent weaknesses and imbalances as outlined earlier for these external factors to take effect and induce cancerous tumours to form. Hence, a healthy immune system and the prevention of hepatitis and liver cirrhosis form the basic approach to defending against external influences and carcinogenic factors that bring about the disease.

### **5.3.1. TCM treatment by differentiating syndromes**

The main syndromes accompanying patients with liver cancer are briefly described here:

1. Depression of liver *qi*.
2. *Qi* stagnation and blood stasis.
3. Coagulation of warm dampness.
4. Damage of liver *yin*.

The following two cases illustrate the fact that several of these syndromes can often be present at the same time, making the treatment of such complex combinations of syndromes more challenging for the TCM physician.

## Case 1

Male, 38 years old, ethnic han.

*First visit:* 5 June 1987

*Western medical diagnosis:* Two months after resection for hepatocarcinoma, the patient had pain in the liver region. Primary liver cancer, cirrhosis.

*History of present illness:* The patient developed hepatitis B in 1974 and was diagnosed with cirrhosis in 1985. In October 1986, a space-occupying lesion measuring 1.3 cm × 1.6 cm was found by B-type ultrasonography in his right liver lobe. Exploratory laparotomy was performed in January 1987 but it was not possible to make a full examination of the lesion owing to nodular cirrhosis. Three months after the operation, the AFP reached 2300 ng/ml. The patient accepted surgery by resection of the right liver lobe. Pathological examination showed cirrhosis and primary liver cancer. After the surgery, the AFP of the patient decreased to 540 ng/ml.

*TCM symptoms:* Bright pale complexion, lassitude, poor appetite, sticky sensation in the mouth, slight nausea, hepatalgia, numbness in the tongue, distension of the eyeball. Dark red tongue, yellowish-white greasy fur; taut, thready and slippery pulse.

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* Retained warm toxins, stagnation of liver and gall bladder.

*Treatment principle:* Soothing the liver and promoting bile flow; resolving dampness and toxins.

*Prescription:* *Hu Zhang* 30 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Ju Pi* 10 g, *Zhu Ru* 10 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Yun Ling* 10 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20 g, *Pu Gong Ying* 20 g, *Shou Wu Teng* 30 g, *Chao Zao Ren* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g, *Long Kui* 20 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 20 g, *Yu Zhi Zi* 15 g, *Zhi Qiao* 10 g and *Hou Po* 10 g. Fourteen doses were prescribed.

*Next visit: 29 June 1987*

The patient increased his food intake. Abdominal distension and hepatalgia were reduced. However, a re-examination using B-type ultrasonography found a space-occupying lesion of around 1.6 cm × 1.2 cm in the left liver lobe. The tongue and pulse were unchanged since the last examination. The prescription was modified to eliminate *Ju Pi*, *Zhu Ru*, *Pu Gong Ying*, *Chao Zao Ren* and *Jiao San Xian*. Another 14 doses were prescribed.

*Next visit: 13 July 1987*

*Symptoms:* Moderate food intake, tinnitus, occasional dull pain in the hepatic region, loose stools. Dark red enlarged tongue with tooth indentations. AFP: 25 ng/ml.

*Syndrome pattern:* Liver depression and spleen deficiency, retained heat toxins.

*Treatment method:* Soothing the liver and fortifying the spleen, clearing away heat and removing toxic substances.

*Prescription:* *Dang Shen* 14 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Chen Pi* 10 g, *Hou Pou* 10 g, *Hang Shao* 10 g, *Mu Xiang* 10 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Hu Zhang* 30 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20 g, *Chao Zhi Zi* 15 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Chao Zao Ren* 20 g, *Shou Wu Teng* 20 g and *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each.

The patient took this prescription for half a month and his AFP dropped below 25 ng/ml, which was within the normal range. Food intake increased but hepatalgia persisted and sleep was poor. The prescription was maintained until 14 September 1987. Re-examination indicated that the lesion in the left liver had disappeared and the AFP had dropped to 25 ng/ml.

From October 1987 to April 1988, the patient took a decoction based on the earlier prescription with slight modifications. Apart from occasional hepatalgia, the patient felt normal in terms of food intake, sleep, urine and stools. He was deemed to be in a stable state.

*Date of visit:* 6 May 1988

Patient complained of tinnitus, dizzy vision, poor food intake, dry mouth, poor sleep and dry stools. General signs: dark red dry tongue with thin whitish fur; taut and thready pulse.

*Syndrome pattern:* Liver and kidney deficiency.

*Therapeutic method:* Nourishing the kidney and fortifying the liver.

*Prescription:* Sheng Shu Di 10 g each, Shan Yao 10 g, Shan Yu Rou 15 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Mu Xiang 10 g, Yuan Zhi 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Dan Pi 10 g, Ze Xie 10 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Tu Fu Ling 20 g, Hu Zhang 20 g, Yuan Hu 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Ban Zhi Lian 30 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Sheng Huang Qi 20 g and Nü Zhen Zi 12 g.

After the patient was on this prescription for more than one month, all symptoms except occasional hepatalgia were relieved. From then on, the patient visited every two months. Some modifications to the prescription were made as appropriate to the symptoms each time. A follow-up visit in November 1990 indicated that he was in stable condition in

general and lived a normal daily life. Re-examination showed that his AFP was lower than 25 ng/ml (negative). B-sonography found no space-occupying lesion in the left liver lobe.

## Comments

TCM uses syndrome differentiation and treatment as the basic approach. Though the primary cancer was removed by surgery, the syndrome pattern of the patient was in a dynamic state. After the resection, the patient first manifested retained warm toxin syndrome. When the toxins were cleared, the patient presented liver depression and spleen deficiency syndrome which later progressed to liver and kidney deficiency. The patient's state transformed from an excess syndrome to a deficiency syndrome, although it should be noted that the deficiency existed even from the very beginning but was concealed by the damp-heat and liver depression. When the damp-heat and liver depression syndromes had been alleviated, the deficiency syndrome manifested itself more clearly.

This case received effective treatment in part because of the combination of correct syndrome differentiation and appropriate medication.

A guiding principle in the treatment process for such cases is to address the acute syndrome first and the milder, more deeply rooted syndrome over the longer term. This principle is especially relevant in cancer cases, which commonly have deficiency-excess complex syndromes. The patient initially had symptoms like a bright pale complexion, lassitude, poor appetite and a thready pulse, indicating spleen *qi* deficiency syndrome; on the other hand, he also had a sticky sensation in the mouth, slight nausea, hepatalgia, numbness in the tongue,

distension of the eyeballs and yellowish-white greasy fur, suggesting the presence of liver and gallbladder damp-heat syndrome. Careful analysis suggested that damp-heat in the liver and gallbladder was the main condition requiring primary attention for treatment. As a result, elimination of damp-heat in the liver and gallbladder was set as the major treatment method and fortifying the spleen was selected as the complementary one. After the damp-heat pathogen was cleared and liver depression alleviated, the patient started to exhibit pronounced symptoms associated with liver *yin* deficiency syndrome. Hence, a variation of the classic *yin* deficiency decoction *Liu Wei Di Huang Wan* was prescribed.

Combining the holistic syndrome differentiation of TCM and the diagnostic techniques of modern medicine at the microscopic level was the integrated approach taken in managing this case. In addition to observing external symptoms and syndromes and the use of B-sonography, indices of liver function, AFP and other microscopic indicators were also closely studied. This combined system enabled TCM to achieve a higher level of effectiveness in therapy.

## Case 2

Male, 31 years old, ethnic han.

*First visit: 13 July 1989*

*Main complaint:* Abdominal distension for four months.

*History of present illness:* The patient started to experience a pricking pain in the right hypochondrium in January 1989. The pain lasted for several minutes and was recurrent. B-sonography and CT scan at Beijing Chaoyang Hospital suggested that there were space-occupying lesions in the liver.

Exploratory laparotomy found bloody ascites in the abdominal cavity, an enlarged liver and gallbladder, and a mass in the right liver lobe (15 cm × 15 cm). Owing to the fact that the tumour had extensively invaded the surrounding liver tissue, resection could not be done. A pathologic specimen was taken and chemotherapy with 5-FU (500 mg) was administered. After the operation, the patient was not given further chemotherapy or radiotherapy. The pathology report indicated hepatoma.

*B-sonography:* The liver had an irregular surface and its internal parts generated an unbalanced echo. The right liver lobe deviated to the left. Several solid masses were detected in the liver, the largest being 7.8 cm × 6.5 cm.

*Liver function tests:* Jaundice index: 30 units.

*Van den Bergh test:* Direct biphasic reaction.

*GPT:* 214 units.

*Western medical diagnosis:* Primary liver cancer, cirrhosis, ascites.

*TCM examination:* Pale darkish tongue with yellowish fur; taut, slippery pulse; jaundiced face. The diagnosis was tympanites (distension of the abdomen).

*Syndrome pattern:* Liver depression and spleen deficiency, dampness in the “middle energizer” (*zhongjiao*) of the trunk.

*Therapeutic method:* Soothing the liver and fortifying the spleen; resolving dampness and jaundice.

*Prescription:* Yin Chen 15 g, Jin Qian Cao 30 g, Yu Jin 10 g, Jiang Huang 10 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Mu Xiang 10 g, Zhu Ling 15 g, Ze Xie 12 g, Chuan Pu 10 g, Zhi Qiao 10 g, Ban Bian Lian 30 g, Da Fu Pi 10 g, Chou Hu Lu 20 g, Che Qian Cao 30 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Zhi Zi 10 g, Bai Xian Pi 15 g, Chang Pu 15 g and Ji Nei Jin 10 g.



*Second visit: 20 July 1987*

Appetite improved, and stool formation was regular. Symptoms like jaundice, oedema and hydroperitonitis were as before. Pale reddish enlarged tongue with thin whitish fur; taut, thready and slightly rapid pulse. Syndrome differentiation and therapeutic principles were unchanged.

*Prescription:* The earlier prescription was modified, with *Rou Gui* 2 g, *Chao Zhi Bai* 10 g each and *Yuan Hu* 20 g added.

The prescription adopted in the second visit continued in subsequent visits but the *Long She Yang Quan* decoction (*Long Kui* 30 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g) was added.

*Date of visit: 26 October 1989 (27 months later)*

The patient had taken more than 70 doses of TCM medication. His condition was much improved and he was in better spirits, with good food intake and without abdominal bloating. His stool formation was regular and urine was normal. His tongue was pale red and enlarged, and his pulse was thready, slippery and slightly rapid. Physical examination showed that the colour of the skin was normal; the sclera was slightly yellowish; the sublingual mucous membranes were normal; a slightly dark complexion; the abdomen was flat; ascites (+++) under the ribs on the liver side and the spleen side. The lower limbs were without oedema. B-sonography showed the liver had an irregular surface and generated an unbalanced echo. Several solid masses could be detected in the liver, the largest being 6 cm × 7 cm; some of them with dark fluid; small degree of ascites.

## **Comments**

Late-stage cancerous ascites are quite difficult to deal with clinically. The patient, suffering from advanced hepatoma,

developed severe jaundice on top of ascites, making it extremely difficult to treat. The courses of TCM medication prescribed in this case demonstrated the three key principles of managing such advanced cancers:

1. Differentiate the syndrome pattern of the patient at each stage and select herbs accordingly. The patient's initial symptoms of a dark complexion, jaundice of a yellowish-green hue, loss of appetite, ill-formed stools, abdominal bloating, dark yellow and scanty urine, and a pale and enlarged tongue were consistent with liver depression, spleen deficiency and accumulation of dampness in middle-energizer syndromes. Soothing the liver and fortifying the spleen to resolve dampness and jaundice were the main therapeutic objectives at this stage. At the second visit, the patient experienced improved food intake, indicating recovery of spleen *qi* and alleviation of liver depression. Symptoms of a dark complexion, an enlarged tongue and poorly formed stools suggested *yang-qi* deficiency syndrome, and dark yellow and scanty urine pertained to the syndrome of damp-heat in the lower energizer. The earlier prescription was supplemented with *Rou Gui* 2 g and *Chao Zhi Bai* 10 g each. *Rou Gui* warms kidney *yang* and enriches spleen *yang*, and thus fortifies the dampness transportation and transformation function of the spleen and the water-governing function of the kidney.
2. Holistic approach to symptoms. As in the previous case, the patient manifested a deficiency-excess complex syndrome. The more acute syndrome was dealt with first. On one hand, *yin* and *yang* were in disharmony, and there was deficiency in *qi* and blood; on the other hand, there were

excess symptoms of abdominal masses, ascites and pain. During the first visit, inducing diuresis to alleviate bloating alone would have been too drastic and risked damaging healthy *qi*; merely reinforcing healthy *qi* would not have been sufficient to remove the dampness. Thus, herbs fortifying the spleen such as *Fu Ling*, *Bai Zhu* and *Ji Nei Jin* were supplemented with *Da Fu Pi*, *Che Qian Cao*, *Chou Hu Lu*, *Yin Chen* and *Jin Qian Cao* to resolve dampness and eliminate jaundice.

3. Clinical experience is essential for the correct management of complex syndromes seen in cancer patients. In the first stage of treatment of this patient, it was decided based on clinical experience that the deficiency syndrome would receive priority attention, whilst at the same time taking steps to deal with pathogenic factors. The decoction *Long She Yang Quan* which combats cancerous pathogens was used next to restore healthy *qi*, drawing on the principle that the body would on its own restore healthy *qi* after pathogenic factors were removed.

#### 5.4. Colorectal Cancer

Colorectal cancer includes colon cancer and rectal cancer, and is one of the most common forms of cancer. Most cases occur above the age of 45; the disease affects both men and women, although its incidence is higher among males.

TCM differentiates a number of syndromes associated with colorectal cancer, occurring singly or in combination:

1. Deficiency of the spleen with warm dampness. The patient has a poor appetite, bloated abdomen, yellow pallor, shortness of breath and lassitude, pain in the abdomen alleviated

by pressure, diarrhoea, blood in the stools, yellow greasy fur, and a slippery and rapid or deep and thready pulse. The therapeutic approach is to fortify the spleen and regulate *qi*, dissipate heat and resolve dampness.

2. Warm dampness with accumulation of toxins. The patient's abdomen is bloated and there is pain which is alleviated by pressure; there may be a lumpy mass in the lower abdomen. Bloating is reduced with release of wind. Other symptoms include diarrhoea or loose stools, a darkish red tongue with ecchymosis (purple spot) and thin yellow fur, and a taut and rapid pulse. The therapeutic principle is to use herbs to dissipate heat and resolve toxins; regulate *qi* and alleviate *qi* stagnation; resolve stasis and shrink masses.
3. Spleen-kidney cold dampness. The patient typically has frequent diarrhoea for a long period of time, looks emaciated and pale in the face, suffers from lassitude and prefers to rest; he has pain in the abdomen which feels better when heat is applied. He is afraid of cold, has white fur on his tongue, and his pulse is deep, thready and weak. He would be diagnosed as having deficiency of spleen and kidney *yang* and cold dampness that accumulates toxins. Treatment consists of warming the kidney, fortifying the spleen and dissipating cold and dampness.

The best treatment results are achieved by a combination of Western methods with TCM medications. Depending on the stage of the cancer, surgery or surgery followed by chemotherapy/radiotherapy may be prescribed; herbal medications can be used concurrently or after surgery and chemotherapy/radiotherapy.

The following two cases illustrate some of the combination methods used.

## Case 1

Female, 60 years old, ethnic han.

*First visit: 25 June 1987*

*Chief complaint:* Five months after colostomy due to sigmoid colon cancer, the patient had a fever for more than ten days.

*History of current illness:* In November 1986, the patient visited a hospital in Beijing for persistent pain in the abdomen for half a month in addition to frequent discharge of clear and loose stools with blood and pus for one week. A lump in the abdomen was detected on physical examination. Exploratory laparotomy was carried out on 20 January 1987, during which a tumour on the posterior abdominal wall was found at the junction of the sigmoid colon and rectum. Excision could not be done, so colostomy was performed and an abdominal pouch installed to replace anal discharge. Biopsy showed that the lump was sigmoid colon adenocarcinoma. Chemotherapy with 5-fluorouracil was administered ten times but halted in March 1987 because of severe side effects. In May the same year, the patient began having abdominal pain, distension and excessive sweating which were not effectively controlled by the Chinese medication received. On 14 June the patient had a sudden onset of fever reaching 39.6°. Antibiotics did not resolve the fever. At this point, the patient came to me for consultation.

*Present symptoms:* Low fever of 37.3°, abdominal pain, perspiration and fear of cold. Occasional cough with little phlegm; normal appetite and urination; pale yellowish dull complexion and sickly looking; dark tongue with purple spots and tooth indentations; tongue with white fur and yellowish greasy coating at the root; thready and slippery pulse. White blood count:  $13.7 \times 10^9/L$ .

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* Qi and blood deficiency with stagnation of warm dampness.

*Therapeutic method:* Clearing heat, removing dampness, resolving toxins and stasis.

*Prescription:* Modified *San Ren* Decoction. *Sheng Yi Mi* 15 g, *Xing Ren* 10 g, *Bai Kou Ren* 10 g, *Ban Xia* 12 g, *Hou Po* 10 g, *Huo Xiang* 10 g, *Pu Gong Ying* 30 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20 g, *Huang Bai* 10 g, *Yuan Hu* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* (*Jiao Mai Ya*, *Jiao Shen Qu*, *Jiao Shan Zha*) 10 g each, *Yin Hua* 20 g, *Chi Shao* 10 g, *Dan Pi* 10 g, *Gan Cao* 6 g and *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g (total of seven doses).

*Second visit: 2 July 1987*

After the first course of medication, abdominal pain was alleviated, damp toxins were partially resolved and fever subsided. The patient still had dull abdominal pain, spontaneous sweating, lassitude, poor appetite, indigestion and heart palpitations, and was in low spirits. The tongue was red with purple spots, with a white and greasy coating; the pulse was thready and slippery. The therapeutic method was maintained, with a slight modification to the medication as follows: *Yin Hua* and *Pu Gong Ying* were replaced by anti-cancer herbs *Cao He Che* 30 g and *Long Kui* 30 g; *Sheng Huang Qi* 20 g and *Sha Shen* 30 g were added to strengthen *qi* (14 doses were prescribed, one per day).

*Third visit: 16 July 1987*

Abdominal distension and pain were greatly reduced, but the patient still experienced dizziness and spontaneous sweating. Appetite and indigestion were improved while stools and urine were normal. The tongue was dark red with purple spots, a white coating and a yellowish-white greasy root; the pulse was thready, slippery and weak.

*Prescription:* The previous prescription was modified by adding *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g and *Bai Tou Weng* 20 g (20 more doses).

*Date of further consultation:* 10 August 1987

The patient was in better physical condition and in higher spirits, according to her own assessment. She still had a poor appetite; stools and urine were normal; the tongue still had purple spots, a thin white coating and a slightly yellow root; the pulse was deep and thready.

*Therapeutic method:* Strengthening the spleen and removing dampness, resolving toxins.

*Prescription:* *Sha Shen* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 20 g, *Yun Ling* 10 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20 g, *Sheng Yi Ren* 15 g, *Ban Xia* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10 g, *Hou Po* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Long Kui* 30 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *She Mei* 20 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g and *Gan Cao* 6 g.

From August 1987 to March 1990, the patient mainly took the aforementioned decoction with slight modifications according to the symptoms exhibited. For example, when there were loose and clear stools, *Dou* and *Bu Gu Zhi* were added; when there were clear signs of heat and dampness, *Bai Tou Weng*, *Qing Pi* and *Bai Hua She She Cao* were added.

*Date of further consultation:* 19 March 1990

The ALT level was 51. The patient had a good appetite and no signs of weak breathing or excessive sweating. She continued to suffer occasionally from diarrhoea caused by inappropriate diet. She moved her bowels four to five times a day and was sensitive to cold. The tongue was a healthier light red with a thin white coating.

*Treatment principle:* Strengthening the spleen and fortifying *qi*; smoothening the liver and regulating the stomach; resolving the dampness and toxins.

*Prescription:* *Yin Chen* 15 g, *Huang Qin* 10 g, *Chai Hu* 10 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Huang Lian* 10 g, *Sheng Yi Ren* 15 g, *Bai Kou Ren* 10 g, *Shan Yao* 10 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Dang Shen* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 30 g, *Hang Shao* 15 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20 g, *Sheng Gan Cao* 6 g and *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g.

After this course of medication, the patient was generally in satisfactory condition. She passed formed stools two to three times a day without abdominal pain; liver functions appeared normal; and there were no unusual discharges from the original location of the anus. She had a ruddy complexion, a slightly dark tongue with a thin white coating, and a thready and slippery pulse. *Yin Chen* was removed from the formula and *Cang Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g and *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g were added to invigorate the spleen and kidney.

From then on, the patient visited the doctor once or twice a year for the next ten years or so. Each examination detected no sign of relapse or metastasis. The patient had taken the herbal decoction consistently for 13 years and stopped only in the year 2000. In 2001, she had a fall and fractured her leg, and recovered after treatment. When I asked about the patient in June 2006, I discovered that, at 79 years old, she was well though physically not very mobile; her other symptoms were stable.

## Comments

The patient accepted one course of chemotherapy but stopped because she could not tolerate the side effects. From then on,



she took TCM herbal decoctions to manage her illness for 13 years, living with her cancer and seeing an improvement in her Karnofsky Performance Status (KPS) from 60 to 90.

At each stage, the patient received therapy based on TCM syndrome differentiation, taking into account both principal and secondary syndromes with appropriate priority placed on the treatment of each. In the initial stages of treatment, accumulation of heat dampness and toxins were the primary syndromes addressed. After the pathogens causing these excess syndromes were gradually removed, the deficiency syndromes, especially spleen-kidney deficiency, became the main target of remedy. Thus, spleen-strengthening, *qi*-reinforcing and methods for invigorating the kidney and spleen were applied. In addition, herbs with heat-removing, toxin-dissolving and anti-cancer functions (such as *Ban Zhi Lian*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, *Teng Li Gen*, *E Zhu*, *Tu Fu Ling* and *Bai Tou Weng*) were used to inhibit the progression of the cancer. The course of therapy combined disease differentiation with syndrome differentiation. It also strengthened healthy *qi* while building body resistance to combat the development of the tumour. *Qi* reinforcement and invigoration of the spleen and kidney were the major methods for building up healthy *qi* whilst for resisting tumour growth, we used the methods of expelling toxins by dissipating heat, regulating *qi* and clearing stagnation, removing dampness to regulate the stomach, resolving stasis, and removing mass accumulations.

After December 1987, the management of the patient's condition was focused on symptoms of lassitude, poor appetite and digestion, spontaneous sweating, disturbed sleep, loose stools, a thready, slippery and weak pulse, and a dark tongue with purple spots. These symptoms were associated with the syndrome

pattern of *qi* deficiency and blood stasis. As a result, she was further treated by kidney-spleen invigoration and the elimination of stasis and toxins. The results were encouraging. The patient was in a stable condition and relaxed state of mind, enjoying better appetite and sleep, leading almost a normal life. She insisted on continuing with the decoction daily until 2000 when she reduced it to three doses each week for another five years to consolidate her recovery.

## Case 2

Male, 52 years old, ethnic han, married.

*First visit:* 22 October 1999

*Main complaint:* Nausea and poor appetite two months after cancer surgery.

*History of current illness:* The patient accepted resection due to transverse colon cancer on 16 August 1999. Biopsy indicated that it was moderately differentiated adenocarcinoma without lymphatic metastasis. Two courses of chemotherapy were administered after surgery. (The patient suffered from diabetes mellitus and hyperlipidaemia several years ago.)

*Present TCM symptoms:* Nausea; poor appetite; normal stools; tongue dark red with purple spots, crack lines in the middle, and white and slightly thick fur; deep and taut pulse.

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* *Qi* deficiency with blood stasis. The patient was deficient in healthy *qi* and suffering from blood stasis caused by damage to *qi* and blood from surgery and further aggravated by chemotherapy.

*Therapeutic principle:* Tonifying *qi* and activating blood, resolving stasis and detoxifying.

While chemotherapy was in progress, the following prescription was used: *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Sheng Yi Mi* 15 g, *E Zhu* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Dan Shen* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g and *Cao He Che* 15 g.

*Date of further consultation: 5 November 1999*

After chemotherapy, white blood count was lower than normal. Symptoms: poor appetite and food intake; lassitude; dark red tongue with thin whitish fur; taut, slippery and rapid pulse.

*Prescription: Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *E Zhu* 10 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Cao Jue Ming* 15 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10 g, *Xian Ling Pi* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g and *Zhi Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Date of further consultation: 11 August 2000*

One year after surgery, the patient was generally in normal condition except for occasional abdominal pains. Appetite was satisfactory; urine and stools were normal; tongue was dark red with a thin whitish coating; pulse was deep, thready and taut. Blood test showed that WBC was 4200/mm<sup>3</sup>.

*Prescription: Teng Li Gen* 15 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 20 g, *Bai Zhu* 10 g, *Fu Ling* 10 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 15 g, *Dang Shen* 15 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g and *Zhi Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Date of further consultation: 31 October 2003*

After the operation, the patient had decoctions based on modifications of the aforementioned formula consistently for

four years to manage his disease. Recent re-examination showed no abnormal signs. The patient was normal in terms of diet, sleep, urine and stools. Examination showed a dark tongue with thin whitish fur and a taut, deep pulse.

*Prescription: Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Dan Shen 15 g, E Zhu 10 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each and Sha Ren 10 g.*

*Date of further consultation: 2 February 2005*

Six years after his operation, the patient was in stable and satisfactory condition. The previous prescription was maintained without *E Zhu*, with three doses per week.

## **Comments**

While the patient was under chemotherapy, the physician chose replenishing *qi* and nourishing blood, fortifying the spleen and tonifying the kidney as the main therapeutic approach to alleviate the adverse side effects of chemotherapy and to protect the blood-building function of the bone marrow and the digestive functions of the stomach and spleen. This in all likelihood helped the patient complete his chemotherapy treatment plan successfully. When the patient's haemogram (blood picture) was poor, *Zi He Che*, *Lu Jiao Jiao*, *Gui Ban Jiao* and other tonifying herbs were added. With the assistance of these decoctions, the patient went through the chemotherapy course without abnormal events.

After the chemotherapy the treatment principle was shifted to a combination of reinforcing healthy *qi* and eliminating pathogenic factors. On the one hand, fortifying the spleen and tonifying the kidney were selected to be the main

method of reinforcing healthy *qi*, the kidney being the origin of innate healthy *qi* endowment while the spleen is the source of acquired healthy *qi* endowment. On the other hand, clearing heat, dissolving toxins and removing stasis was the major method for eliminating pathogenic factors. To manage the colon cancer, the physician chose to use *Teng Li Gen*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, *Bai Ying*, *Long Kui*, *She Mei*, *Tu Fu Ling* and other herbs. The prescription of 11 August 2000 is the most commonly used one for post-operation patients under chemotherapy.

The patient enjoyed a stable condition after taking herbal decoctions over the long term. The prescription was later simplified with fewer herbs, although maintaining the principle of combining the reinforcement of healthy *qi* with eliminating pathogenic factors. The patient was in better health and re-examinations every half a year showed nothing significantly unusual. He continued to take a maintenance dose of decoction every two days.

## 5.5. Stomach Cancer

Although the term “stomach cancer” is not used in the Chinese medical classics, there are extensive references to this condition in various ancient texts. The *Huangdi neijing (Lingshu)* describes the condition of a bloated abdomen, abdominal pain near the heart, difficulty swallowing and food obstruction, while the Han dynasty medical master Zhang Zhongjing’s *Jinkui yaolüe* uses the term “*fanwei*” to describe the symptoms of vomiting after morning and evening meals and difficulty digesting food.

In modern TCM theory, the basic origins of stomach cancer are attributed to inappropriate dietary habits, worry and anxiety,

disorder in the spleen functions, stagnation of *qi* and accumulation of phlegm. The syndrome patterns associated with stomach cancer are as follows:

1. Disharmony between the liver and the stomach. The common symptoms for this syndrome are a bloated abdomen with occasional pain spreading to the ribs, bitterness in the mouth, a vexatious feeling in the chest, belching, reduced appetite and food intake or vomiting, thin yellowish or white fur on the tongue, and a taut, thready pulse. The therapeutic principle for this syndrome is to soothe the liver and regulate the stomach, suppress the reverse flow of food and reduce pain.
2. Cold deficiency of the stomach and spleen. The symptoms are dull gnawing pain in the stomach and abdomen which is partly relieved with pressure and heat, occasional vomiting of clear fluids, a pale and dull complexion, cold limbs, tiredness and lacking in spirit, loose stools, a pale and swollen tongue with tooth indentations, white moist fur on the tongue, and a deep and slow or deep and thready pulse. The therapeutic principle is to warm the stomach, fortify the spleen and regulate the stomach.
3. Stagnation caused by accumulated toxins with blood stasis and stomach heat. Typical symptoms are stabbing pain in the stomach, pain with a feeling of heat, increased pain after ingesting food, dry mouth and thirst, abdominal sensitivity to pressure, and a lump below the heart region. Occasionally there is vomiting of blood or blood in the stools, dry skin, a dark purplish tongue with spots, and a deep and taut or thready and astringent pulse. The therapeutic principle is to eliminate toxins and resolve stasis, clear heat and nourish *yin*.

4. *Qi* and blood debility. This syndrome tends to happen at a late stage of stomach cancer when the body is severely anaemic. Symptoms include a pale and swollen face, lassitude, palpitations and shortness of breath, dizziness and blurred vision, insomnia, spontaneous sweating, loss of appetite, body emaciation, a palpable lumpy mass in the upper abdomen, a pale and fat tongue with white fur, and a weak, thready pulse. The therapeutic principle is to tonify *qi* and nourish blood, fortify the spleen and invigorate the kidney.

We consider two cases of stomach cancer that exhibit some of these syndromes.

### Case 1

Male, 77 years old, ethnic han.

*First visit: 1 March 2002*

*Chief complaint:* Difficulty swallowing, chest tightness and discomfort after meals. Carcinoma of the cardia (opening of the oesophagus into the stomach) diagnosed 40 days ago.

*History of present illness:* Patient had difficulty swallowing in January 2002 and was diagnosed with a tumour. The biopsy histological report indicated adenocarcinoma of the cardia, part of it suggesting signet-ring cell carcinoma. On 24 January 2002 abdominal exploration discovered that 3 cm of the oesophagus was hardened. Round nodes of different sizes were found on the left liver, ranging from 0.2 cm to 0.8 cm. The surgical procedure was terminated because of an excessive drop in blood pressure. The diagnosis was carcinoma of the lower part of the oesophagus with spread to the liver. Radiotherapy and chemotherapy were not administered

because of the advanced age of the patient. In March 2002 he came to the hospital with symptoms of difficulty swallowing and discomfort after meals; urine and bowel movements were normal.

*Present TCM symptoms:* Deep red tongue with yellow fur; pulse thready and taut.

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* Deficiency of the spleen and stomach, phlegm and blood stagnation.

*Therapeutic principle:* Reinforcing the spleen and invigorating *qi*, removing toxins to resist cancer.

*Prescription:* Xiao Ye Jin Qian Cao 20 g, Jiang Huang 12 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 12 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Jiao San Xian 30 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Sha Ren 10 g (one dose per day).

*Subsequent visit:* 29 March 2002

The symptoms were reduced.

The prescription followed the same therapeutic principle with some modifications: Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Teng Li Gen 20 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Wu Wei Zi 10 g, Jiang Huang 12 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Sha Ren 10 g.

*Date of visit:* 17 May 2002

The patient's situation was stable, with good appetite, no difficulty swallowing, normal urination and defecation, a deep red tongue with thin white fur, and a deep, thready pulse.

*Prescription:* Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, Teng Li Gen 20 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Jiang Huang 12 g, Sheng



*Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g and Da Zao 6 pieces.*

*Date of visit: 14 June 2002*

The situation was stable with no special new symptoms.

*Prescription: Sha Shen 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Teng Li Gen 20 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g and Cao Zao Ren 20 g.*

*Subsequent visit: 8 October 2002*

Normal appetite, good sleep, normal urination and bowel movements, dark red tongue with thin white fur, deep and thready pulse.

*Prescription: Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, Teng Li Gen 15 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Sha Ren 10 g and Jiang Huang 12 g.*

*Subsequent visit: 6 December 2002*

The patient's condition was stable.

*Prescription: Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 20 g, She Mei 15 g, Teng Li Gen 15 g, Bai Zhu 10 g, Fu Ling 10 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Cao He Che 15 g, Yuan Hu 15 g, Jiang Huang 12 g, Dong Ling Cao 15 g, Tai Zi Shen 15 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each and Sha Ren 10 g.*

*Date of visit: 18 April 2003*

The patient did not show any obvious symptoms; condition was stable.

*Prescription: Teng Li Gen 15 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Long Kui 15 g, She Mei 15 g, Dong Ling Cao 15 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Ba Yue Zha 15 g,*

*Yuan Hu* 15 g, *Zhong Jie Feng* 15 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Jiao San Xian* 30 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g and *Sha Ren* 10 g.

*Date of visit: 27 June 2003*

Cardiac carcinoma had been diagnosed for one and a half years. The patient now had no difficulty swallowing and enjoyed normal appetite, urination and bowel movements.

*Prescription: Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Teng Li Gen* 15 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *She Mei* 15 g, *Dong Ling Cao* 15 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 15 g, *Zhong Jie Feng* 15 g, *Ba Yue Zha* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g and *Sha Ren* 10 g.

*Date of visit: 26 September 2003*

The patient's general condition was still stable; cellular immune function was normal. The tongue was deep red with yellow fur, the pulse thready, taut and slippery.

*Prescription: Sha Ren* 30 g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Zhi Qiao* 10 g, *Jiang Huang* 10 g, *Bai Ying* 30 g, *Long Kui* 15 g, *Tu Fu Ling* 15 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 15 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Sheng Gan Cao* 6 g and *Shi Hu* 10 g.

*Date of visit: 4 November 2004*

Gastroscopic examination showed a neoplasm at the lower cardiac corner, its border ulcerated and indistinct. The diagnosis was cardiac carcinoma (Borrmann type I). The patient insisted on continuing with herbal therapy.

*Date of visit: 14 July 2006*

Four and a half years after exploratory surgery, the patient's condition was stable and he generally felt well. He had a

good appetite and was in good spirits. Urination and bowel movements were normal; the tongue continued to be dark red with thin white fur; the pulse was taut, thready and slippery.

*Prescription: Sheng Huang Qi 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Jiang Huang 10 g, Bai Ying 30 g, Tu Fu Ling 15 g, Ban Zhi Lian 15 g, Teng Li Gen 20 g, Dong Ling Cao 15 g, Zhong Jie Feng 15 g, Ba Yue Zha 15 g, Jiao San Xian 30 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g and Sha Ren 10 g.*

## Comments

1. Surgery for cardiac carcinoma was terminated because of a sharp drop in the patient's blood pressure. Because of the advanced age of the patient, radiotherapy and chemotherapy were also not used. Three days after surgery, he sought Chinese medical treatment. Based on the principle of increasing healthy *qi* and combating pathogenic factors, we adopted herbs that reinforced the spleen to increase healthy *qi*, like *Sheng Huang Qi*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Nü Zhen Zi*, *Gou Qi Zi*, *Bai Zhu* and *Fu Ling*. These can strengthen the patient's immune function and resistance to disease. Herbs for detoxification and resisting cancer were added, including *Bai Ying*, *Long Kui*, *She Mei*, *Teng Li Gen*, *Tu Fu Ling*, *Cao He Che* and *Bai Hua She She Cao*. Herbs like *Xiao Ye Jin Qian Cao*, *Jiang Huang* and *Ji Xue Teng* were used for soothing the liver and gallbladder; and herbs like *Jiao San Xian*, *Ji Nei Jin* and *Sha Ren* for improving motility and appetite.
2. A significant feature of the case was that the Chinese medical herbs regulated the disorders induced by the cancer and

helped rebuild a new internal balance between healthy *qi* and pathogenic factors. It enabled the patient to *co-exist* with the cancer in his body, restraining its development and spread in order to prolong and enhance his quality of life. It illustrates how Chinese medical herbs can play an important role in the management of malignant tumours by encouraging internal balance in a terminally ill cancer patient.

## Case 2

Female, 67 years old, artist.

*First visit: 13 March 1998*

*Chief complaint:* Three years after the gastric cancer operation, the patient suffered from tinnitus, acid regurgitation, thirst, constipation and insomnia.

*History of present illness:* Cancer resection three years ago; pathological examination showed adenocarcinoma with no lymph node metastasis; depth of infiltration unclear. Chemotherapy was administered after the operation. Recent examination did not reveal any significant abnormality other than gallstones and bile duct distension.

*Current symptoms:* Tongue red with little fur coating; pulse deep, thready and taut; tinnitus; constipation; insomnia; and thirst.

*TCM syndrome differentiation:* Yin deficiency and stagnation of liver *qi*.

*Therapeutic principle:* Soothing liver *qi* and nourishing stomach *yin*.

*Prescription:* *Da Xiao Jin Qian Cao* 30 g each, *Jiang Huang* 12 g, *Hu Zhang* 15 g, *Yu Jin* 10 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 30 g, *Bai Hua She She*

*Cao* 30 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 20 g, *Zhi Qiao* 10 g, *Shi Hu* 10 g, *Bei Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g and *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each.

*Subsequent visit: 8 May 1998*

Recent gastroscopy revealed ulcerative anastomotic stoma with mild gastric inflammation. The patient had poor sleep, fair appetite, occasional gastric discomfort and thirst. The tongue was deep red with no fur; the pulse deep, thready and weak.

*Prescription: Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Shi Hu* 15 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Chuan Bei* 10 g, *Shan Zha* 10 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 20 g, *Hang Shao* 15 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 20 g and *Zhi Gan Cao* 6 g.

*Date of visit: 5 June 1998*

The symptoms were occasional stomach pain, fair appetite, occasional abdominal distension, dry stools one to two times a day, dry mouth, belching, good sleep, occasional anxiety attacks, yellow urine, blurring of vision, pain around the eyes; the tongue was dark with scanty fur; the pulse thready and slippery.

*Prescription: Sha Shen* 30 g, *Mai Dong* 15 g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10 g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15 g, *Sha Ren* 10 g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10 g, *Jiao San Xian* 10 g each, *Ji Xue Teng* 30 g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 12 g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10 g, *Hang Shao* 15 g, *Yuan Hu* 12 g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30 g, *Cao He Che* 15 g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 20 g and *Sheng Gan Cao* 4 g.

*Date of visit: 20 August 1999*

Four years after surgery, abdominal CT scan and blood picture showed no abnormality. The patient had occasional chest pain;

a red tongue with little fur; and a deep, thready and slippery pulse.

*Prescription: Sha Shen 30 g, Shi Hu 15 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Yu Zhu 10 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Ji Xue Teng 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Gou Qi Zi 10 g, Bai Hua She She Cao 30 g, Hang Shao 15 g, Sheng Gan Cao 6 g, Teng Li Gen 30 g, Ban Zhi Lian 20 g, Sheng Huang Qi 30 g and Jiao San Xian 10 g each.*

In the subsequent six years, there were further visits each year; in general, the patient's condition was stable with no indication of a recurrence of cancer symptoms.

*Date of visit: 22 April 2005*

Nearly ten years after surgery for stomach cancer, the patient was in satisfactory condition with no sign of any spread of the cancer. Ultrasound scan revealed that the gallstones were still there. The patient's symptoms included thirst, gastric reflux, fair appetite, dry stools, normal vision, a dark tongue with little fur, and a deep, thready and weak pulse.

*Prescription: Sha Shen 30 g, Tai Zi Shen 30 g, Mai Dong 15 g, Tian Hua Fen 15 g, Shi Hu 15 g, E Zhu 10 g, Hu Zhang 15 g, Teng Li Gen 30 g, Nü Zhen Zi 15 g, Yu Zhu 10 g, Jiao San Xian 10 g each, Ji Nei Jin 10 g, Sha Ren 10 g, Cao Jue Ming 15 g and Yin Chen 12 g.*

## Comments

1. Three years after surgery, although there was no recurrence of the cancer, the patient showed signs of severe damage to the stomach *yin* and gastric inflammation, consistent with deficiency of *qi* and *yin*, with symptoms of thirst, a red tongue with scanty fur, dry stools and dyspepsia. The use

of *Sha Shen*, *Mai Dong*, *Shi Hu*, *Tian Hua Fen*, *Yu Zhu* and *Hang Shao* addressed the problem by nourishing *yin* and promoting secretions of clear fluids.

2. The patient's gallstones and gastric inflammations could have caused pains in the chest region.
3. The decoctions used also contained smaller amounts of anti-cancer herbs like *Ban Zhi Lian*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, *Hu Zhang*, *Bai Ying* and *Teng Li Gen* which could have helped prevent recurrence of the cancer. At 75 and after eight years of taking TCM decoctions, the patient was in satisfactory health and good spirits.

# MAJOR FORMS OF CANCER (II)

### 6.1 Prostate Cancer

Prostate cancer is a tumor of the male urogenital system and has high morbidity rate in developed countries. Latent prostate cancer is asymptomatic and is usually diagnosed at later stages. With the development of modern medical technology, treatment for prostate cancer has achieved significant advancement.

It is believed that the incidence of prostate cancer is related to genetic inheritance in ethnic groups, geographical factors, dietary factors such as high fat and high cholesterol foods, and environmental pollution.

#### Diagnosis of prostate cancer

Patients usually present symptoms such as slow urination, urinary retention, hematuria (blood in urine) and bone pain due to metastasis (spread of cancer cells to other parts of the body). Some might even appear with pathological fractures before detection of prostate cancer. Patients with these symptoms or are discovered with prostatic hypertrophy during routine examination or with palpated prostate nodules during digital rectal



examination should be evaluated by using ultrasound guided biopsy of prostate gland and a variety of other methods now available to the urologist. The accuracy of positive results from biopsy is 80 to 90%. Blood test for prostate-specific antigen (PSA) is a useful marker prostate cancer especially for advanced stage patients for whom as much as 90% would show positive readings. The other specific tumor marker will be prostatic specific acid phosphatase (PSAP) which is positive in more than 70% of the cases.

### 6.1.1 Treatment

Integration of Chinese and Western medical treatment for prostate cancer

#### *Stage A and B1*

1. Radical prostatectomy
2. Endocrine therapy.

TCM treatment which has the function of supplementing *qi* and improving blood circulation used after surgery or along with hormone therapy could prevent recurrence of the cancer.

#### *Stage B2*

1. Radical prostatectomy and pelvic lymph node dissection
2. Orchiectomy
3. Endocrine therapy
4. Radiotherapy.

Patients should use TCM treatment after surgery and during radiotherapy, as it can tonify *qi* and nourish *yin*, remove blood stasis and thus alleviate the side effects of these treatments.

## Stage C

Current treatment methods vary.

1. Extended field external beam radiation should be used for the old and weak, while individuals who have better body condition can choose to undergo both external beam radiation and interstitial radiation therapy.
2. The combined use of endocrine therapy, external beam radiation of expanded treatment area and radical prostatectomy alongside with TCM treatment to tonify *qi*, nourish *yin* and also remove blood stasis.

## Stage D (*distant metastasis*)

A minority of patients has only 1 to 3 lymph node metastasis and such patients should start hormone therapy as soon as possible. Depending on the patient's condition, they can undergo extended pelvic lymph node dissection, radical prostatectomy and also extended field radiation therapy. Patients in D2 stage may also consider including chemotherapy or immunotherapy. In this stage, TCM applies treatment according to the differentiated syndromes to improve the efficacy of chemotherapy and immunotherapy, increase the quality of life, and prolong life span.

Frequently-used endocrine therapy for prostate cancer: Orchiectomy (surgical castration) may be replaced with "chemical castration". Nevertheless, orchiectomy and endocrine therapy are still available. Prostate cancer is an androgen-dependent tumor thus it is common to use a combination of endocrine therapies to achieve maximum androgen blockage. Commonly used androgen deprivation therapies include steroidal anti-androgens (Progestins), nonsteroidal anti-androgens (Flutamide, Nilutamide etc.) and luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone (LHRH) agonists (Leuprorelin, Buserelin, Triptorelin). LHRHs are used in

high dosage long-term to eventually stop the pituitary gland from producing hormones so as to achieve a medical castration effect.

During endocrine treatment, TCM can help soften and disperse accumulations, tonify *qi* and improve blood circulation and also have a detoxification and anti-cancer effect. Chinese medicine with estrogen-like activity should be used while herbs that strengthen *yang* and tonify kidney should not be used as they could increase the level of androgens.

### Case 1

Male, 65 years old, ethnic han, married, retired.

First visit: 24 September 2001

Chief complaint: Prostate cancer surgery 2 weeks ago

History of illness: Patient had prostate cancer surgery in September 2001 and biopsy indicated tumour in the right lateral anterior zone of the prostate with Gleason Score Stage B and no lymph node metastasis. PSA level decreased from 8.4ng/ml to 1ng/ml after surgery. Patient's general condition was good, urinary catheter had yet to be removed; pale red tongue with thin white fur; pulse sunken, thready and slippery.

Western medical diagnosis: Prostate cancer post-surgery

TCM syndrome differentiation: *Qi* and blood deficiency with residual toxins

TCM treatment principle: Tonify *qi* and blood, resolve blood stasis and eliminate toxins

Prescription: Raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10, *Bai Ying* 30g, *She Mei* 15g, *Long Kui* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai*

*Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15g

Second visit: 8 October 2001

Present symptoms: Constipation, fatigue, PSA level 0.06ng/ml, frequent night urination 4 to 5 times a night; pale red tongue with thin white coat; thready and slippery pulse.

Prescription: *Bai Ying* 30g, *She Mei* 15g, *Long Kui* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Qu Mai* 15g, *Shu Di Huang* 12g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Dan Pi* 12g, *Fu Ling* 10g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Tu Si Zi* 10g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

Subsequent visits

8 July 2002

Symptoms: Generally well, surgical wound hurts after exercise, appetite and sleep was normal; pale red tongue with white fur; taut and slippery pulse.

Prescription: *Xu Chang Qing* 10g, *Yuan Hu* 10g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10g, *Dong Ling Cao* 15g, *Du Zhong* 10g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Dang Shen* 15g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Tu Si Zi* 10g, *Bai Ying* 30g, *She Mei* 15g, *Long Kui* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

28 October 2002

Symptoms: Caught a cold recently, cough, a little yellow phlegm, itchy throat, appetite and sleep was satisfactory, urination and defecation was normal; pale red tongue with white fur; pulse was thready, slippery and fast.

Prescription: *Qian Hu* 10g, *Xing Ren* 10g, *Yin Hua* 15g, *Huang Qin* 10g, *Yu Xing Cao* 20g, *Bai Ying* 30g, *She Mei* 15g, *Long Kui* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Jie Geng* 10g, raw *Gan Cao* 6g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g

From November 2002 to July 2003, patient's condition was stable; he continued with the TCM prescription modified from the previous one.

23 February 2005

Symptoms: General conditions were good, dark tongue with thin white coat, pulse taut and slippery. Physicochemical examination showed PSA 0.06ng/ml, F-PSA <0.01ng/ml, AFP 12.29ng/ml. Liver function was normal.

Prescription: *Shu Di Huang* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Dan Pi* 12g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g, *Hou Po Hua* 10g. (30 doses, one per day.)

27 April 2006

Symptoms: No significant discomforts, frequent night urination, dry stools, fatigue; dark tongue with thin white fur; pulse was taut, thready and slippery.

Prescription: *Shu Di Huang* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Dan Pi* 12g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Chuan Lian Zi* 10g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Du Zhong* 10g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tu Fu Ling* 15g, *Tu Si Zi* 10g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

22 June 2006

Symptoms: Generally well, dark tongue and white thin fur; pulse taut, thready and slippery. Patient continued with previous medication.

## Comments

1. Patients in stage A and B can choose to do radical prostatectomy. Studies indicate that at 10-years post-intervention follow-up, patients in these stages who underwent radiotherapy had similar treatment results to those who underwent surgery. Endocrine therapy is one of the main treatments for prostate cancer, especially for metastatic cancer of the prostate. 40% of the patients who went through endocrine therapy had reduced tumour, 40% remained stable and 20% had tumour progression. The core principle of TCM treatment is to restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens, and apply treatment according to syndrome differentiation. For prostate cancer, the use of kidney *yang* tonifying herbs should be avoided. Kidney yin nourishing herbs, which have estrogen like effects, should be used instead and herbs to treat the syndromes of damp heat, blood stasis and toxicity in the lower energizer should also be given. Radiotherapy complemented with TCM has observed effects of reducing adverse reactions and side effects.
2. Thus patient came for consultation two weeks after prostate cancer surgery. Post-surgery patients usually have *qi* and *yin* deficiency and remnant toxicity, hence he was treated by supplementing *qi* and nourishing blood, resolving blood stasis and reducing toxicity. Prescription used

was Long She Yang Quan decoction (龙蛇羊泉饮) with addition of *Bai Hua She She Cao* and *Cao He Che* to clear toxicity and combat cancer; raw *Huang Qi*, *Tai Zi Shen*, *Nü Zhen Zi* and *Tian Hua Fen* to supplement *qi* and *yin*; *Ji Xue Teng*, *Chuan Lian Zi* to liven blood, regulate *qi* and clear obstructions in meridian flow. Modifications were then made to this basic prescription, by adding detoxifying herbs like *Dong Ling Cao*, *Tu Fu Ling*, and tonifying herbs such as *Tu Si Zi*, *Gou Qi Zi*, *Du Zhong*. In the later stages of treatment, modified *Liu Wei Di Huang* Decoction (六味地黄汤) was used to nourish *yin* and tonify kidney. In this case, a combination of syndrome and disease differentiation was employed. As symptoms of damp heat in the lower energizer were not obvious, *Qu Mai*, *Bian Xu* and herbs in *Ba Zheng San* (八正散) were not used. The patient was generally well at all times, PSA was maintained at a low level, and condition was stable, free of disease, and without bone metastasis when observed at 5 years after treatment, with good quality of life.

## Case 2

Zheng, male, 76 years old, ethnic han, married.

First visit: 18 December 2013

Chief complaint: Detected and diagnosed with prostate cancer 2 months ago

History of present illness: Slow urination persisted for a period of time and was diagnosed with prostate cancer after biopsy in

October 2013. Tumor has invaded peripheral nerves, with Gleason score of  $3 + 4 = 7$ . No bone and pelvic lymph nodes metastasis was seen.

Medical history: Diabetes mellitus for 20 years.

Tongue and pulse: Dark swollen tongue with white fur, sunken and taut pulse.

Western medical diagnosis: Prostate cancer

TCM diagnosis: Prostate cancer

TCM syndrome differentiation: Qi and kidney deficiency, accumulation of damp toxins internally

TCM treatment principle: Tonify *qi* and kidney, detoxify and resolve urination difficulty

Prescription: *Sheng Huang Qi* 20g, *Dang Shen* 10g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Zhi Gan Cao* 6g, *Ji Xue Teng* 15g, *Nü Zheng Zi* 12g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Bu Gu Zhi* 10g, *Sha Shen* 15g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15g, *Qu Mai* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Chao Mai Ya* 10g, *Chao Gu Ya* 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 18g. One dose a day.

Patient advised to undergo radiation therapy and to combine both Western medical and TCM treatment.

Second visit: 15 December 2014

Symptoms: Patient had undergone 33 sessions of radiotherapy alongside TCM treatment and there were no significant side effects observed. Appetite was satisfactory; urine and stools were normal. Radiotherapy was followed by endocrine therapy with antiandrogenic drug once every month for 5 months.



Blood test on 26 September 2014 shows that T-PSAL is 0.03, F-PSA<0.02UG/L. Patient continued with TCM treatment for 1 year with no bone metastasis found.

Present symptoms: Feeble knees, poor memory, sore eyes due to retinal macular degeneration, history of diabetes mellitus.

Tongue and pulse: Slightly dark tongue with white fur, pulse sunken and taut

TCM syndrome differentiation: Kidney and *yin* deficiency, insufficient *qi* and blood stasis

TCM principle for treatment: Supplement kidney *yin*, tonify *qi* and activate blood circulation

Prescription: *Sheng Di* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Dan Pi* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15g, *Shi Hu* 10g, *Bu Gu Zhi* 10g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 20g, *Dang Shen* 12g, *Zhi Gan Cao* 6g, *Ji Xue Teng* 20g, *Qu Mai* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Chao Mai Ya* 10g, *Chao Gu Ya* 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

One dose a day, continued treatment

## Comments

1. Patient sought a combination of Western medical and TCM treatment after being diagnosed with prostate cancer. TCM herbal medication restores healthy *qi* while Western medical radiotherapy eliminates pathogens. TCM was able to reduce or alleviate the side effects of radiotherapy and also enhance the efficacy of radiotherapy.
2. TCM was also used in combination with endocrine therapy which came after radiotherapy. The warm pathogen

which was created by radiotherapy damages the body's *yin*, resulting in the presentation of symptoms with kidney and *yin* deficiency. Thus the patient was given *Liu Wei Di Huang* Decoction (六味地黄汤) to nourish kidney *yin*, and in addition, herbs to supplement *qi*, promote blood circulation and reduce toxicity. TCM treatment continued to restore healthy *qi* and resist cancer, maintain and enhance efficacy, so as to prevent recurrence and metastasis.

3. *Liu Wei Di Huang* Decoction is a classic prescription consisting of three herbs with tonic effect and three herbs with purgative effect. This prescription is mild and balanced with no adverse reaction. It is suggested in studies from China that it can prevent cancer (There is evidence that it can reduce the rate of esophageal epithelial dysplasia turning cancerous. Clinical trials on animals suggest that it can inhibit cancer growth).

## 6.2 Leukemia

Leukemia, a cancer of the blood or bone marrow, is a malignant disease of the hematopoietic system, which is involved in the production and development of blood cells. Abnormal proliferation of a particular type of immature white blood cells, also known as leukemia cells, is found in the bone marrow and other hematopoietic tissues. These leukemia cells not only crowd out normal cells but also infiltrate and affect the normal body tissues. An increase in numbers of such immature white blood cells is also found in the blood. The usual types of abnormal white blood cells are granulocytes, lymphocytes and monocytes. Leukemia characterized by abnormal proliferation of red blood cells is termed as erythroleukemia and in some rare cases patients with lymphoma may also have leukemia.

Leukemia can be classified as acute or chronic. The disease progression of acute leukemia is rapid, and has a poor prognosis. However, modern therapies such as bone marrow transplant used in combination with TCM have greatly improved treatment efficacy, and have been shown to relieve symptoms and increase chance of survival.

Integrating TCM and Western medical is an effective approach to increase efficacy of treatment for acute leukemia. The most common treatment regimen currently would be a combination of chemotherapy drugs. Chemotherapeutic agents are also used in maintenance therapy when leukemia goes into remission. TCM and supportive care should be provided in the course of chemotherapy, as experience suggests that the remission rate of patients who receive integrative treatment is significantly higher than that for patients who undergo chemotherapy only. Patients who take up TCM treatment during remission period to restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens can reduce the incidence of relapse, prolong remission period, and increase quality of life.

We note below some aspects of therapy that apply particularly to leukemia.

### 6.2.1 Treatment

#### Integrative treatment during chemotherapy

Chemotherapy as the mainstream treatment has the effect of eliminating pathogens while TCM complements it by restoring healthy *qi*. During breaks between cycles of chemotherapy, TCM can continue to fortify *qi* and strengthen the spleen and nourish the liver and spleen, which helps to recover bone marrow and immune functions thereby helping to prepare the body for the next cycle of chemotherapy. When chemotherapy has been completed, TCM

can both restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens in order to sustain remission.

## TCM treatment for complications of bone marrow transplant

Certain complications are commonly encountered with bone marrow transplants.

### *Fever*

Fever due to damp-heat: Most commonly seen during infection, when the patient is presented with symptoms of damp-heat, treated with heat-clearing and dampness-eliminating herbs.

Fever due to *yin* deficiency together with damp-heat: Patients may also have *yin*-deficiency symptoms, hence the treatment principle should be nourish *yin* and clear heat, remove dampness and eliminate toxicity.

### *Jaundice*

Before a bone marrow transplant, high dosages of chemotherapy drugs used produce side effects of liver cell damage, causing jaundice which in TCM is viewed as a presentation of damp-heat in the liver and gall bladder. TCM correspondingly treats to relieve jaundice and remove dampness, clear heat and improve liver functions. Herbs used frequently are *Chai Hu*, *Huang Qin*, *Yin Chen*, *Ba Yue Zha*, *Chi Shao*, *Sheng Zhi Zi*, *Jin Qian Cao*, *Jiang Huang*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, etc. These herbs are also used to preserve liver functions and prevent jaundice for patients subjected to high dosages of of chemotherapy drugs.

### Differentiating Complex Syndromes

As the leukemia is clinically very complicated, the rigorous application of TCM syndrome differentiation is specially important. The symptoms of the disease change rapidly, with many complex

variations, hence differentiating syndromes is rendered more difficult. From clinical observations, the majority of leukemia cases involve intense toxicity and heat in the blood, liver and kidney *yin* deficiency, deficiency of *qi* and blood, blood stasis and phlegm toxicity. It is necessary to have a comprehensive analysis of the imbalances in *yin* and *yang*, deficiency or excess in the vital organs, *qi* and blood disorder, and discord in the meridians and collaterals, so as to provide a sound basis for decisions on appropriate treatments.

### Complications resulting from Western medical treatments

During Western medical treatments, leukemia patients often experience complications such as fever, infections, hemorrhage, meningeal leukemia (cancer cells spreading to the meninges), and myelosuppression (decrease in bone marrow activity). Patients should be treated with TCM prescriptions according to the diagnosis from differentiating syndromes. Experience shows that TCM and Western medical therapies used in combination have significantly higher efficacy.

### Anti-leukemia Herbs

There are many anti-leukemia herbs; the more frequently used ones are:

*Xi Shu Gen* (fruit), *Huang Yao Zi*, *Zong Shu Zi*, *Ya Zhi Cao*, *Wu Gu Teng*, *Feng Wei Cao*, *Xu Chang Qing*, *Mo Yu* (*She Liu Gu*, *Ju Ruo*), *Ba Jiao Lian*, *Qian Jin Zi*, *Chuan Xiong*, *Yang Ti Gen*, *Ban Zhi Lian*, *Bai Hua She She Cao*, *Shan Dou Gen*, *Zhu Yang Yang*, *Shan Ci Gu*, *Chan Su*, *Mao Zhua Cao*, *Gou She Cao*, *Ya Dan Zi*, *Ma Lan Gen*, *Mu Tou Hui*, *Xing Xiang Tu Er Feng*, *Ma Qian Zi*, *Gan Chan Pi*, *Hu Huang Lian*, *Zi Teng*, *Qi Ye Yi Zhi Hua*, *Ba Qia*, *Tu Fu Ling*, *Long Kui*, *Da Qing Ye*, *Jin Yin Hua*.

### 6.3 Pancreatic Cancer

The term “pancreas” is not found in TCM ancient literature but based on the symptoms of the pancreatic cancer, references to it can be found under “jaundice” and “accumulation and aggregation”. In TCM, it is believed that this disease is associated with alcohol, smoking, intake of moldy and greasy food, etc.

Most pancreatic cancers are diagnosed at an advanced stage and at this stage only 10-20% of the patients fulfill the criteria for surgery. The overall 5-year survival rate after surgery is less than 10%, making it one of the worst prognoses among cancers. The most common type of pancreas cancer is pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma which accounts for 90% of the cases, followed by acinar cell carcinoma.

#### Diagnosis

Other than loss of appetite, fatigue, abdominal discomfort and indigestion, patients with cancer at the head of the pancreas often have obstructive jaundice, while patients with cancer at the body and tail of the pancreas will experience back pain. Medical imaging techniques such as ultrasound computed tomography (CT) and cholangiopancreatography are crucial to detect the tumor mass. Tumor markers are important references, the more specific marker for pancreatic cancer management will be CA 19.9 (normal range <37 U/ml), with a diagnostic accuracy rate of 90%. If the value exceeds normal range and rises continuously, examination of the pancreas and digestive should be performed. Besides that, 70% of the patients also show a rise in carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA). Patients have to undergo biopsy or surgical pathology to confirm diagnosis of pancreatic cancer. Endoscopic Retrograde Cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) can attain diagnostic sensitivity and accuracy of 95%.

## TCM pathology

TCM regards this as a disease of the liver and spleen. Exogenous damp pathogen, pensiveness and anger, and preference for greasy food cause *qi* stagnation in the liver, phlegm and dampness to aggregate and blood stasis and toxins to accumulate; if it persists for a prolong period of time it could develop into a malignant tumor.

### 6.3.1 Treatment

Treatment follows the principle of syndrome differentiation:

1. Liver *qi* stagnation, blood stasis and toxin accumulation.  
Treatment is to soothe the liver and regulate *qi*, detoxify and disperse accumulation
2. Heat dampness in the liver and gall bladder, with impaired descending function of *fu* (腑) organs:  
Treat by clearing liver heat and promoting bile flow, clearing obstructions in *fu* organs so as to remove toxins
3. Liver depression and blood stasis, toxic heat and blood stasis aggregation.  
Treatment is to soothe the liver and resolve toxins, strengthen *qi* to regulate blood flow.
4. Dampness obstructing middle energizer (*zhong jiao* 中焦) functions, with spleen *yang* deficiency:  
Treat by invigorating the spleen and warming *yang*, reinforcing *qi* to eliminate dampness.

TCM and Western medical integrative treatment for pancreatic cancer

For early stage pancreatic cancer, it is advisable for patients to undergo surgery and complement it with TCM treatment after surgery. However, most pancreatic cancer patients are already at an advanced stage of the disease when they are diagnosed with it, hence chemotherapy may not achieve desirable outcomes; radiotherapy can only relieve some pain. Regional intra-arterial infusion chemotherapy (Gemzar + 5FU) has clinical benefit rate of 36%, objective response rate of 13.6%, and median survival time of 6.1 months. High-intensity focused ultrasound can be used for locally confined pancreatic cancer.

In advanced stages of pancreatic cancer, chemotherapy can be used together with radiotherapy in order to increase its efficacy.

TCM can be applied after surgery or together with radiotherapy and chemotherapy. TCM helps to promote healing for post-surgery patients and reduce the side effects of chemotherapy and radiotherapy. It will also strengthen the immune system of the patients and boost the treatment effects of both chemotherapy and radiotherapy.

Common herbs used for pancreatic cancer

*Chai Hu, Xiang Fu, Jiang Huang, Yin Chen* to soothe the liver and promote bile flow. *Chen Pi, Zhi Qiao, Ban Xia, Bai Zhu, Fu Ling* to strengthen the spleen and remove dampness. *Raw Huang Qi, Dang Shen, Zhi Gan Cao, Gou Qi, Nü Zhen Zi, Shan Yu Rou* strengthen the spleen and reinforce *qi*, and tonify the liver and kidney. *Yuan Hu, Bai Qu Cai, Xu Chang Qing* are used to regulate *qi* and relieve pain, *Ji Xue Teng, Chi Shao, E Zhu* to promote blood flow and remove stasis, *Zhong Jie Feng, Ban Zhi Lian, Bai Hua She She Cao, Teng Li Gen, Long Kui, She Du* to clear heat, and resolve toxins with an anti-cancer effect. Alcohol-prepared *Da Huang*



may be used for constipation, and *Hai Er Cha* (*Er Cha*), *Lao He Cao* for diarrhea. Fried *Mai Ya*, fried *Gu Ya*, *Shen Qu*, fried *Shan Zha*, *Ji Nei Jin*, *Sha Ren* can protect the stomach and help in digestion.

In summary, TCM helps to restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens. TCM helps to restore healthy *qi* by reinforcing *qi* and strengthening spleen, tonifying liver and kidney, preserving the foundation of body health after birth. It eliminates pathogens by removing toxins and having an anti-cancerous effect, promoting blood circulation and dispersing aggregation.

Formulation for Head of pancreas cancer

*Chai Hu* 10g, *Yin Chen* 15g, *Ba Yue Zha* 15g, *Hu Zhang* 20g, *Jin Qian Cao* 20g, *Gui Jian Yu* 15g, *Zhi Zi* 10g, *Huang Qin* 10g, *Chi Shao* 15g, *Bai Ying* 20g, *Long Kui* 20g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Jiao San Xian* 30g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g etc.

Formulation for Body of pancreas cancer

*Chai Hu* 10g, *Jin Qian Cao* 15g, *Jiang Huang* 15g, *Xiang Fu* 10g, *Tao Ren* 10g, *Zhong Jie Feng* 20g, *Long Kui* 20g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Jiao San Xian* 30g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g etc.

## 6.4 Lymphoma

Lymphoma is a cancer in the lymph nodes or the lymphatic system. According to its histopathology characteristics, lymphoma can be categorized into Hodgkin lymphoma and non-Hodgkin lymphoma. In ancient TCM literature, lymphoma belongs to the group of diseases known as *yin ju* (阴疽), *shi ju* (石疽), *ehe* (恶核), *shi rong* (失荣) (swollen nodules that may be hard in texture).

Causes of disease

It is known to be related to:

1. Epstein–Barr virus
2. Immunodeficiency
3. Environmental factors (over exposure to ionizing radiation, chlorophenol, benzene and etc.)
4. Hereditary factors
5. Infection (e.g. mucosa-associated lymphoma and helicobacter pylori infection are regarded as highly related).

The development of lymphoma is a result of multiple contributing factors.

### Pathology

Lymphoma can be classified as Hodgkin's lymphoma (HL) and non-Hodgkin's lymphoma (NHL) according to the pathology characteristics of the cancer. The pathological subtypes of lymphoma are complicated and it is now known to be a group of cancers of the lymphatic system. It consists of different pathological subtypes, each subtype with its own morphology, immunophenotype, tissue source, genetic features, clinical presentations and prognosis. It is necessary to have a good knowledge and understanding of the different lymphoma subtypes and its prognostic features in order to apply the most suitable treatment.

### Diagnosis

Pathological biopsy cytology test is required for diagnosis, while immunohistochemical examination and genetic testing is necessary to confirm diagnosis and determine the subtype.

#### **6.4.1 Treatment**

Integrative TCM and Western medical treatment may include chemotherapy, radiotherapy, biotherapy, TCM herbal medicine

etc. The use of a reasonable integrative treatment plan can enhance the treatment efficacy for the malignant tumour. Nowadays, 60-80% of HL can be treated, while more than 50% of NHL can achieve long term remissions. Regardless of the therapies used at the different phase of the disease, complementing treatment with TCM can reduce side effects, improve efficacy, and increase the remission rate, survival and quality of life.

#### Guidelines for integrative treatment

1. Reasonable selection of localized or whole body treatment
2. Expel pathogens and restore healthy *qi*
3. It is important maintain complete remission by drawing on the capabilities of TCM and biomedical therapies combined.
4. Alleviate the more pressing symptoms before treating the root cause of the disease. For example, when bleeding occurs in patients with complications like superior vena cava syndrome or leukemia, it is necessary to monitor the patient's condition and provide the urgent treatments promptly.

Patients who are in the early stages of gastrointestinal NHL should plan for surgery and complement with TCM treatment after surgery and during chemotherapy. TCM can help to restore proper digestive functions, and also increase the efficacy of chemotherapy and decrease its side effects, thus reducing damage to the immune system. The author has treated numerous gastrointestinal NHL patients with survival rates of more than 10 years.

NHL patients undergoing chemotherapy can use the prescription below

*Chen Pi* 10g, *Ban Xia* 10g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Sheng Huang Qi* 30g, *Zhi Gan Cao* 6g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g,

*Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Sha Ren* 10g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Lu Jiao Shuang* (melted) or *E jiao* (melted) 10g, *Qian Cao* 15g, *Da Zao* 6 pieces, parched *Ma Ya* 10g, parched *Gu Ya* 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g

One dose each day, boil and drink at separate times

Prescription to be used during biotherapy is as below

Raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Sha Shen* 20g, *Dang Shen* 15g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Zhi Gan Cao* 6g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Bai Xian Pi* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Bu Gu Zhi* 10g, *Chai Hu* 10g, *Jiang Huang* 10g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, parched *Gu Ya* and *Ma Ya* each 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g.

TCM treatment of lymphoma

A minority of patients who are unable to undergo chemotherapy or other Western medical therapies can alternatively seek TCM treatment. The application of treatment for the differentiated syndromes is as follows:

(1) Cold phlegm coagulation: Multiple nodules under the skin, nodes in the neck, *e he*, no change in skin colour, painless, not itchy, lower body temperature and feeling of cold, thready and unsmooth pulse, slight red tongue with white fur.

Differentiated syndrome: Cold phlegm coagulation, toxic nodules aggregation in lung

Treatment principle: Warm the cold coagulation, disperse the phlegm and aggregation

Prescription: Modified Yang He Decoction (阳和汤) (*yang-harmonizing decoction*)

*Shu Di Huang* 10g, *Ma Huang* 8g, *Bai Jie Zi* 10g, *Rou Gui* 4g, *Pao Jiang* 5g, *Zao Ci* 10g, *Zhi Tian Nan Xing* 9g, *Xia Ku Cao* 12g, *Lu Jiao Jiao* (melted) 10g, *Sheng Gan Cao* 10g, together with *Xiao Jin pills* (小金丹).

- (2) *Qi* stagnation and toxin accumulation: Nodules beneath the skin but above the tissue membranes, stone-like aggregation, chest discomfort and flank bloatedness, fretful and irritable, slight red tongue with petechiae and white coat, thready and taut pulse.

Differential syndrome: *Qi* stagnation and toxins accumulation, stone-like aggregation

Treatment principle: Soothe the liver and regulate *qi*, disperse stagnation and detoxify

Prescription: Modified *Shu Gan Kui Jian* Decoction (疏肝溃坚汤)

*Chai Hu* 10g, *Qing Pi* 10g, *Dang Gui* 10g, *Chi Shao* 10g, *Xiang Fu* 10g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15g, *Jiang Can* 10g, *Jiang Huang* 10g, *Ji Xue Teng* 3g, *Chuan Shan Jia* 10g, *E Zhu* 12g, *Zao Xiu* 10g, *Pu Huang* 10g, *Wu Ling Zhi* 10g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

- (3) Blood deficiency and internal dryness: Dry mouth and tongue, fever and chills, itchy skin, constipation, yellow urine. Thready and fast pulse or thready taut pulse, red tongue with white fur.

Differentiated syndrome: Blood deficiency and internal dryness, wind heat and toxins accumulation

Treatment principle: Nourish blood and moisturise, expel wind and resolve toxins

Prescription: Modified *Qing Gan Lu Hui* pills (清肝芦荟丸)

*Sheng Di Huang* 10g, *Chi Shao* 10g, *Dang Gui* 10g, *Qing Pi* 10g, *Huang Lian* 8g, *Kun Bu* 15g, *Zao Ci* 10g, *Ge Fen* 15g, *Lu Hui* 10g, *Tian Hua Fen* 15g, *Sha Shen* 20g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Dan Pi* 12g, *Niu Bang Zi* 10g, *Gan Chan* 8g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

- (4) Liver and kidney *yin* deficiency: Afternoon fever, dry mouth and throat, lower back and knee ache, dizziness, hot palm and feet, night sweat, multiple enlarged lymph nodes. Thready and taut pulse, red tongue with thin fur.

Differentiated syndrome: Liver and kidney *yin* deficiency, heat and toxins accumulation

Treatment principle: Nourish liver and kidney, detoxify and resolve nodes

Prescription: Modified *Zhi Bai Di Huang* Decoction (知柏地黄汤)

*Sheng Di Huang* 10g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Dan Pi* 12g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Zhi Mu* 10g, *Huang Bai* 10g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Zao Xiu* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Sheng Mu Li* 30g, *Bie Jia* 15g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

- (5) *Qi* and blood deficiency: Pale face and lips, sluggishness and lethargy, poor appetite, face and limbs edema, palpitations and shortness of breath, multiples lymph nodes enlargement. Thready and feeble pulse, pale and swollen tongue with tooth marks and white fur.

Differentiated syndrome: *Qi* and blood deficiency, healthy *qi* deficiency and excessive pathogens

Treatment principle: Tonify both *qi* and blood, restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens

Prescription: Modified *Ba Zhen* Decoction (八珍汤) (Eight-Treasure Decoction)

*Dang Shen* 15g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Zhi Gan Cao* 6g, *Dang Gui* 10g, *Hang Shao* 10g, *Chuan Xiong* 10g, *Shu Di Huang* 10g, *Raw Huang qi* 30g, *Zhe Bei Mu* 10g, *Xia Ku Cao* 15g, *Ban Zhi Lian* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g

TCM herbs for the treatment of symptoms

Fever: *Qing Hao*, *Di Gu Pi* and *Yin Chai Hu*

High fever: *Han Shui Shi*, *Sheng Shi Gao*, *Zi Xue San* (紫雪散), *Niu Huang Qing Re San* (牛黄清热散) etc.

Night sweat: *Duan Long Gu, Duan Mu Li, Fu Xiao Mai, Shan Yu Rou, Wu Wei Zi, Ma Huang Gen* etc.

Itchy skin: *Bai Xian Pi, Di Fu Zi, Ku Shen, Qing Jiao, Chi Shao, Wu Shao She, Gan Chan and Jin Xie*

Anemia: *He Shou Wu, Sheng Huang Qi, Dang Gui, Ji Xue Teng, Gou Qi Zi, Lu Jiao Jiao, E Jiao, Zi He Che, Huang Jin* etc.

## **Case study**

Female, 69 years old, ethnic Han, married.

First visit: 26 October 1986

Chief complaint: Sore throat for about a month

History of present illness: Patient had sore throat for a month, aggravated by swallowing. Purplish lump was observed at the right tonsil and back of the tongue. Biopsy showed that it was non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, indolent B-cell (IB). After chemotherapy blood counts were low. Patient requested for TCM herbal treatment.

Present symptoms: Sore throat, dry mouth, cough, constipation; red tongue with thin white coat; thready and fast pulse; low white blood count.

Western diagnosis: Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, indolent B-cell (IB)

TCM diagnosis: Large subcutaneous nodule

Syndrome differentiation: *Qi* and yin deficiency, accumulation of blood stasis and toxins

TCM treatment principle: Fortify *qi* and nourish yin, resolve toxins and clear heat

Prescription: *Bei Sha Shen* 30g, *Tian dong* and *Mai Dong* each 15g, *Tian Hua Fen* 20g, *Sheng Di Huang* 15g, *Xuan Shen* 15g, *Jie Geng* 10g, *Huang Qin* 10g, *Bei Dou Gen* 8g, *Bei Mu* 10g, raw *Huang Qi* 20g, *Jiao San Xian* each 10g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Cao He Che* 15g, *Zhu Ru* 10g, *Qian Cao Gen* 15g

Subsequent visit: 22 November 1986

Blood profile improved after taking the prescription. The prescription was modified and consumed during chemotherapy, *Nan Sha Shen* 20g, *Tai Zi Shen* 20g, *Xing Ren* 10g, *Gou Qi Zi* 12g, *Tu Si Zi* 10g, *Zi He Che* 10g, *Xian Ling Pi* 10g, *Chuan Xiong* 10g and *Yin Hua* 15g were added while *Jie Geng*, *Zhu Ru*, *Huang Qin*, raw *Huang Qi* and *Cao He Che* were removed.

White blood cell count dropped during radiotherapy and chemotherapy but gradually recovered after taking the prescription. Patient's condition was rather stable and smooth.

Subsequent visit: 15 March 1987

Patient had palpitations, shortness of breath, fatigue, frequent night urination, pain in the liver region, dreams-disturbed sleep, low white blood cell count; dark red tongue and yellow greasy fur; pulse thready and slippery.

TCM syndrome differentiation: Heat dampness and toxins, *qi* deficiency and blood stasis; heat dampness was apparent, so *San Ren Tang* (三仁汤) was used.

Prescription: *Sheng Yi Mi* 20g, *Xing Ren Ni* 10g, *Bai Kou Ren* 10g, *Hua Shi* 10g, *Qing Ban Xia* 10g, *Chuan Hou Po* 10g, *Bo Zi Ren* 10g, *Jing Chi Shao* 10g, *Bei Sha Shen* 30g, *Da Mai Dong* 15g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10g, raw *Huang Qi* 20g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, *Qian Cao Gen* 15g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 10g, *Gou Qi Zi* 10g, *Mian Yin Chen* 12g, *Jiao San Xian* 10g each.



Subsequent visit: 20 June 1987

Chemotherapy was successfully completed. Patient had dizziness, poor appetite, dry mouth, bowel movements 2 to 3 times a day, lower back pain, bone pain, accompanied by perspiration, aversion to cold; blood profile, liver functions and ECG were normal; dark red tongue with black-brown greasy fur; sunken, thready and fast pulse.

Patient had *qi* and *yin* deficiency after chemotherapy, *yang* was also affected but there were remnants of toxins. Condition was complex thus treatment principle was modified to supplementing *qi* and nourishing *yin*, warming *yang* and detoxification.

Prescription: Raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Fang Feng* 10g, *Fu Xiao Mai* 30g, Yunnan *Fu Ling* 10g, *Sha Shen* 30g, *Mai Dong* 15g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10g, *Sheng Di Huang* 12g, *Nü Zhen Zi* 15g, *Shi Hu* 15g, *He Shou Wu* 15g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, *Bu Gu Zhi* 10g, sliced *Fu Zi* 6g, dried ginger 6g, *Tu Fu Ling* 20g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g, *Cao He Che* 15g.

After TCM treatment, patient was in good spirits, appetite was better, black tongue fur subsided from the centre and was almost cleared at the 18 July visit. Patient was recovering from symptoms, hence the TCM principle used in treatment appeared appropriate.

The black tongue fur appeared again when the patient stopped TCM medications for 2 days but soon after he continued with the herbal prescription the black tongue coat subsided. When black tongue fur was gone, dark purple tongue with petechiae (dark-red spots) and thin dry yellow fur appeared instead. Previous prescription was modified, with *Fu Zi* and dried ginger

removed and *Qian Cao Gen*, *Chi Shao*, *Dan Shen*, *Tao Ren*, *Shan Yu Rou* etc. were added. The patient was still generally weak and was down with shingles and recurring cough and flu. Nevertheless, TCM continued to further fortify *qi* and nourish *yin*, detoxify the body, and resolve blood stasis.

Subsequent visit: 5 March 1988

Cardiopulmonary and liver functions were normal. ESR 18mm/h, ultrasonography showed no abnormality in liver, gall bladder, pancreas and spleen but a small cyst was seen in the left kidney. Subsequently, patients continued with the treatment principle of supplementing *qi* and fortifying the spleen, nourishing *yin* and invigorating kidney, promoting blood flow and clearing toxins.

Prescription: *Sheng Di Huang* 15g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Mai Dong* 15g, *Ji Nei Jin* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g, sliced *Fu Zi* 3g, *Ji Xue Teng* 30g, *Dan Shen* 15g, *Chi Shao* 10g and *Bai Hua She She Cao* 30g.

Patient carried on with TCM treatment. Patient had spontaneous sweating, fatigue, loose bowels aversion to cold, warm palms and dry mouth, night perspiration and joint pain; black-brownish tongue fur. After nourishing *yin* and warming *yang*, supplementing *qi* and fortifying spleen, the patient's condition was seen to have improved. Patient was followed up once a year, and got better each year.

Subsequent visit: 8 October 1989

A thorough body examination was performed and no abnormalities were observed, ultrasonography and X-ray were also

normal. WBC was  $5.6 \times 10^9$  /L, HGB 105g/L, platelets  $200 \times 10^9$  /L. Modified *Sheng Mai Yin* (生脉饮) and *Liu Wei Di Huang* Decoction were used.

Prescription: *Shu Di Huang* 12g, *Shan Yu Rou* 10g, *Shan Yao* 10g, *Dan Pi* 10g, *Ze Xie* 10g, *Fu Ling* 10g, raw *Huang Qi* 30g, *Tai Zi Shen* 30g, *Sha Shen* 30g, *Mai Dong* 15g, *Wu Wei Zi* 10g, *Bai Zhu* 10g, *Sha Ren* 10g, *Zhi Qiao* 10g, *Hou Po* 10g, *Cao He Che* 15g, red dates 8 pieces.

*Rou Gui* 2g, sliced *Fu Zi* 3g and etc. was added when yang deficiency was significant.

CT scan on 4 June 1990 indicated no significant enlarged lymph nodes in the abdomen but detected a cyst in the left kidney. Glucose level was moderately high, ESR 8mm/h, liver and kidney function was normal.

General condition was good. CT scan in year 1990 was normal. Spontaneous sweating and fatigue; appetite, urination and bowel movements were normal. Tongue was slightly red with teeth indentation and thin fur; pulse was sunken, thready and weak. Patient had *qi* and blood deficiency, accumulation of blood stasis and toxins in the body, treated by enriching *qi*, nourishing *yin* and detoxification.

## Comments

1. In the modern context of integrative medicine, lymphoma patients should undergo chemotherapy and concurrently complement it with TCM medications to fortify *qi*, activate blood, and invigorate liver and spleen so as to reduce toxins and increase efficacy. However patients who undergo both chemotherapy and radiotherapy should have TCM

medications to supplement *qi* and nourish *yin*, activate blood and resolve masses. After chemotherapy and radiotherapy, patients can consume TCM medications for a period of time to restore healthy *qi* and expel pathogens, reduce swellings and resolve masses. This strengthens the treatment effect and prevents recurrence.

2. This patient had non-Hodgkin's lymphoma and completed a combination of treatments which included radiotherapy, chemotherapy and TCM medications. Four years after the disease went into complete remission, the patient continued to maintain remission with TCM medications.
3. The syndromes differentiated in this case were complicated. After radiotherapy, she had typical *yin* fluid deficiency symptoms like dry mouth, dry nose, yellow tongue fur and poor appetite; However after chemotherapy, patient showed *qi* and blood deficiency symptoms like shortness of breath, fatigue, palpitations, sweating and low WBC. The patient also had low immunity and was easily contracted flu. Thus, the patient was treated with TCM principle of fortifying *qi* and consolidating the exterior, nourishing *yin* and promoting secretions of clear fluids, resolving toxins and combating tumour. The patient's healthy *qi* was gradually restored, physical strength increased and symptoms improved.
4. Black tongue fur was observed on two occasions, either when extreme heat turned cold or *yang* deficiency resulted in excessive *yin*. The patient was afraid of cold, had loose stools and edema therefore the black greasy tongue fur indicated *yang* deficiency. Sliced *Fu Zi*, *Rou Gui* and dried ginger were added to the prescription, after which black tongue fur progressively subsided. In this case, solely nourishing *yin* and producing clear fluid would not have

resolved the black tongue fur, showing the importance of syndrome differentiation diagnosis in TCM.

5. TCM helps to regulate the functions of *yin* and *yang*, *qi* and blood, and restore healthy *qi* and eliminate pathogens. Anti-cancer herbs were also used to inhibit tumour growth and achieved good clinical results.

## Case Study

Male, 51 years old, official.

First visit: 25 June 1979

Chief complaint: Swollen lymph nodes accompanied with low fever and fatigue for half a year.

History of current illness: Patient was given lymphatic tuberculosis treatment for 20 days but symptoms did not improve. At admission, 11-12 nodes were palpable on bilateral neck and submandibular space, 4-5 nodes detected underarm and 3-4 nodes found on supraclavicle. The lymph nodes were pea-sized, firm, painless and partially merged. Mediastinal CT scan showed two enlarged hilar lymph nodes and tip of spleen is felt when the patient is in supine position. Biopsy indicated non-Hodgkin's lymphoma stage III. HGB 108g/L, WBC  $4.4 \times 10^9$  L, segmented neutrophil 61%, lymphocytes 35%, suppressed hematopoiesis, blood counts of the erythroid and lymphoid lineage were low, percentage of lymphocytes was normal, megakaryocytes were not seen.

Symptoms: Pale red tongue with thin yellow fur; pulse was taut and thready

Western medical diagnosis: Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma stage III

TCM diagnosis: *Luo Li* (癰癤) (palpable nodes on the neck)

Syndrome differentiated: Qi stagnation, blood stasis and accumulation of phlegm

Treatment principle: Clear heat and detoxify, resolve stasis and phlegm

Prescription: *Ban Zhi Lian* 25g, *Bai Hua She She Cao* 25g, *Shan Ci Gu* 25g, *Xia Ku Cao* 30g, *Bai Zhu* 15g, *Dang Gui* 12g, *Chi Shao* 15g, *Dan Pi* 10g, *Sheng Di Huang* 20g, *Tian Dong* 12g, *Da Qing Ye* 15g, *Sheng Mu Li* 30g, *Kun Bu* 15g, *Hai Zao* 12g, *Chuan Bei* 10g, one dose taken twice a day.

Patient was given a combination of western medical and TCM treatment upon admission. Besides chemotherapy, patient was prescribed with herbal prescription to clear heat and toxins, resolve stasis and phlegm. Patient was administered with Cyclophosphamide 400mg intravenously on day 1 and 2, Vincristine 2mg intravenously on day 3, intramuscular injection of Bleomycin 10mg on day 4 and 7, oral Prednisone 20mg twice a day for day 1 to 7. This treatment was repeated for another week. One cycle was 14 days. After treatment for half a month, patient's symptoms of fatigue subsided, swollen lymph nodes softened and gradually shrank in size or resolved. After the second cycle of chemotherapy, only one palpable node was found at each of the body parts mentioned previously and none felt in other areas. After a rest period of one week, patient prepared for the third cycle of chemotherapy. However Bleomycin was out of stock, patient continued with COP protocol only for 1 week. Patient was discharged on the 29 September 1979, general condition was well, appetite and sleep was good, only a pea-sized node was palpable on the right submandibular space. HGB

115g/L, WBC  $4.5 \times 10^9$  L, segmented neutrophil 79%, lymphocytes 16%.

## Comments

Patient had generalized lymphadenopathy and biopsy that indicated non-Hodgkin's lymphoma stage III. The usual suggested treatment regimen is radiotherapy together with combination chemotherapy. Even though the patient had low hemoglobin level in the peripheral blood, white blood cells and platelet count were normal. However, due to ineffective hematopoiesis, it was not possible to perform both radiotherapy and chemotherapy on this patient. Based on disease and syndrome differentiation, the patient had noticeable phlegm and damp stasis, *qi* and blood deficiency was insignificant. This means that the depletion of healthy *qi* was not as obvious as the exuberant pathogens, thus chemotherapy protocol COBP was used but dosage of Cyclophosphamide and Bleomycin were reduced to minimize the toxicity of chemotherapy drugs. Chemotherapy was complemented with TCM medication to clear heat and toxic materials, activate blood and eliminate stasis, soften and resolve masses so as to increase the efficacy of chemotherapy in shrinking swollen lymph nodes. The integration of western medical and TCM in the management of this patient has exercised the TCM principle of eliminating pathogens and restoring healthy *qi*. In the process of treatment, even though hematopoiesis was ineffective, chemotherapy drugs were given at low dosage, thus the white blood cells were maintained at normal range and hemoglobin level was even increased. Clinically the patient was always in good spirits, his appetite was satisfactory, he had no obvious adverse effects and the prognosis was good.

# DIET, EXERCISE AND HEALTH CULTIVATION

For the prevention of cancer, as well as for patients who have already contracted the illness, diet, exercise and the cultivation of health are of paramount importance. TCM looks at the human body holistically and regards cancers as originating from imbalance disorders in the body brought about by physical as well as emotional factors. This accounts for the critical roles that diet, exercise and health cultivation, including cultivation of the spirit, play in the management of cancer.

### **7.1. Nutrition in Cancer Prevention**

Western medical science has a voluminous literature on the role of nutrition in the prevention of cancer as well as predisposing a person to cancer. However, many of these findings, including those from extensive clinical trials, are controversial and inconclusive. Most nutritionists recognize that foods that produce free radicals in our bodies predispose us to disease, including cancer. Free radicals are harmful chemical substances that induce metabolic injuries that accumulate over time and eventually cause disease. Advocates of diets rich in plants and grains and low in oils and animal products



believe that plants and grains do not induce the “deadly cascade of free radicals” that assault the delicate membranes of cells; instead they contain antioxidants which help to neutralize free radicals and may help to prevent cancers, particularly cancers of the breast, prostate, colon, rectum, uterus and ovaries.<sup>1</sup>

The most comprehensive study of the role of diet in causing and preventing cancer is arguably that conducted by Colin Campbell when he was at Cornell University’s Division of Nutritional Science.<sup>2</sup> Based on a 20-year epidemiological study of the dietary habits in 2400 counties in different regions of China and the incidence of serious diseases like cancer, coronary heart disease, stroke and diabetes, Campbell concluded that the ingestion of animal proteins is a strong predisposing factor towards these diseases, including cancer. A striking example is that of liver cancer associated with a fungus-produced toxin, aflatoxin, found in mouldy peanuts. Campbell’s studies showed that children who had a high content of peanuts in their diet had higher rates of liver cancer. More significantly, children from wealthier families who consumed a high level of animal proteins had a higher rate of liver cancer than children who ate less animal protein and consumed more peanuts.

There is also extensive evidence suggesting that carcinogens found in some pesticides, food additives, and even food wrappers and containers contribute significantly to the incidence of certain cancers. In addition, various nutritionists have long lists of healthy foods that they claim reduce the incidence of cancer; many of these are ordinary vegetables like broccoli, tomatoes and garlic. This subject will undoubtedly continue to engage the efforts of nutritional research scientists the world over.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Esselstyn (2008), pp. 38, 108.

<sup>2</sup> Campbell and Campbell (2007).

## 7.2. Nutritional Therapy for Cancer Patients

Cancer is a systemic disease. It is characterized not only by localized progressive uncontrolled growth and its ability to infiltrate and destroy normal tissues and organs, but also by a series of nutritional and metabolic problems that could leave the patient debilitated and emaciated, eventually resulting in organ failure and death.

There are several factors that contribute to nutritional disorders in cancer patients. The first factor is reduced food intake and absorption, which is attributed to the production of toxins from tumour metabolism. Consequently, symptoms such as loss of appetite and weight loss are observed in the initial stage of cancer. The second factor arises from the body being deprived of nutrients because of the rapid growth of cancer cells. When the patient receives treatments such as chemotherapy, radiotherapy and surgical interventions, further damage is inflicted. Nausea, bloating of the abdomen and difficulty ingesting food are some of the more common side effects of such therapy, leading to a further deterioration in nutritional health.

The importance of nutritional problems is often overlooked by both doctors and patients. There is a tendency for doctors to focus more on the efficacy of the treatment in combating cancer cells and neglecting the harmful effects of nutritional deficiencies. This can be exacerbated by lack of knowledge and guidance in nutrition on the part of the patient and his supporting family, thus leading to the consumption of large amounts of foods that are unsuitable for the patient's condition and aggravate the impairment of his digestive system.

Inappropriate nutrition for cancer patients can have adverse clinical consequences. Hence, it is necessary to use the correct diet and to improve the patient's medical condition to give him the best chance of controlling the progression of the disease.

Certain guidelines should be followed in planning nutrition for cancer patients:

1. It is essential to conduct an assessment of the nutritional status of the patient before and during the course of treatment to help decide the diet and supplemental nutrients required by the patient. Nutritional therapy can improve the patient's immune system, helping the body to better cope with the side effects of cancer treatments. Hence, nutritional therapy should be included in all cancer patients' personalized treatment plan.
2. Nutritional therapy should start early. The choice of nutritional therapy is dependent on several factors, such as the cause of nutrition disorder, the progression of the disease, the side effects of cancer treatments, the psychological state of the patient, as well as economical and social issues.
3. The mode of administration for late-stage cancer patients should be one that is life-supporting, be it short-term or long-term. Examples of these modes of administration are oral, nasal and parenteral (i.e. not through the mouth).
4. The effect of nutrition on cancer cell growth and the patient's ability to resist the disease has been a matter of controversy. One point of view is that nutrition to maintain body weight can encourage the growth of cancer cells. Some animal studies seem to suggest that improving the nutritional health status of the patient can increase the growth rate and size of cancer cells but other studies indicate that such an outcome is rare. Experiments on mice have demonstrated that there is no change in the uncontrolled growth rate of metastasized cancerous cells even when they are injected with large amount of nutrients. Nevertheless, in a situation when cancer cells are present during the course of nutritional therapy, it is

essential to include other forms of treatment aimed at controlling cancer cell growth.

5. An important and primary objective of nutritional therapy is to increase the body's ability to assimilate and metabolize food intake. TCM methods can be quite effective toward this end.

### **7.3. TCM Perspectives of Appropriate Diets for Cancer Patients**

Despite a wealth of knowledge on nutrition in Chinese medicine accumulated from ancient times, further intensive research should be conducted using modern nutritional knowledge to understand and assess TCM dietary practices and perspectives. With particular reference to cancer patients, a number of dietary principles are worthy of note:

1. To prevent the recurrence of cancer, one should avoid eating food that is mouldy, deep-fried, stale, high in glucose or contains nitrosamines.
2. In TCM theory, the spleen and stomach are responsible for the digestion and absorption of nutrients essential to health. Hence, emphasis is placed on the importance of protecting the spleen and stomach, especially when patients are undergoing chemotherapy, radiotherapy as well as TCM treatments. Foods that will harm the digestive system should be avoided.
3. Cancer patients are often depressed and worried over their conditions. Such emotional states can damage the functions of the spleen and stomach, resulting in loss of appetite and reduced food intake and adversely affecting the efficacy of

cancer treatments. Establishing a good physician-patient relationship helps the patient to have more confidence and adopt a more optimistic attitude. This in turn leads to an improvement in the absorption and metabolism of the nutrients by the body and a better prospect for improvement in the patient's condition or recovery.

4. In Chinese medicine, food can be classified according to five flavours and four natures. The five flavours are pungent, sweet, sour, bitter and salty, and the four natures are cold, hot, warm and cool. As pointed out in Chapter 2 of this book, the core approach of TCM diagnosis and treatment lies in syndrome differentiation. As a broad principle, the type of diet for cancer patients should therefore be based on the syndrome presented. For every type and stage of disease, different patients present different syndromes. For example, patients who present hot syndrome should avoid foods that are warm in nature, such as ginseng, venison, lamb, longan and prawn, and are better off eating foods that are cool in nature and have the functions of clearing heat and reducing inflammation, such as purslane, lotus, asparagus and duck. Some people advocate cancer patients eating Chinese soft-shell turtle, but one should be aware that turtle cools the blood and nourishes *yin*, and is also harder to digest. It is not suitable for patients who exhibit spleen and *yang* deficiency. Hence, the syndrome presented by the patient is the most suitable determinant of the appropriate foods for his diet.
5. Another class of foods that should be given to the patient is those that strengthen healthy *qi* and/or have anti-cancer properties. A variety of cereals, meat, fruits and vegetables can strengthen healthy *qi*. If the patient's spleen and stomach are functioning satisfactorily, foods thought to have anti-cancer properties like shepherd's purse (荠菜),

Chinese barley (Job's tears 生苡米), purslane (马齿苋), *Doellingeria scaber* (东风菜), *Isoden* (香茶菜), bitter melon, day lily (黄花菜), warrigal greens (番杏), walnut, seaweed, water chestnut (荸荠), caltrop (菱角) and mushroom may be suitable.

A list of common foods with anti-cancer effects is provided in Appendix 2.

#### 7.4. Dietary Restrictions

Diet has a close relationship to the occurrence and development of cancerous tumours, hence it is essential to consider dietary restrictions for cancer patients. However, although many ancient Chinese medical texts advise strict control over the diets of sick patients, from the point of view of the modern understanding of nutrition they may be overly restrictive.

Over several decades of medical practice, I have come across many patients who, despite having undergone surgery, chemotherapy or radiotherapy, do not observe dietary restrictions, eating such diverse foods as chicken, fish, prawns, sea cucumber, lamb, venison and even dog meat. But there was little evidence that they had cancer relapses on account of such diets. There is also a belief in some quarters that eating chicken can cause cancer. But Chinese medical records suggest that chicken helps the body overcome deficiency syndromes and recover from post-illness weakness, warms the middle interior, and strengthens the five *zang* organs. In fact some folk recipes for cancer have a combination of chicken eggs with twigs of the walnut tree or Chinese blister beetle (*Cantharis* or Spanish fly). Many cancer patients eat chicken with no evidence that it is harmful to their condition. Sea cucumber has been found from modern research to have anti-cancer properties.

Our considered opinion is that diet should be suited to the individual person and his particular medical condition at a particular time and we should avoid making vague generalized statements about what can or cannot be consumed by cancer patients. Although we respect ancient advice on this matter, it is also necessary to avoid going overboard and placing unnecessary restrictions on the diet of cancer patients. Professor Yu has personally witnessed patients who, following prohibitions on a number of common foodstuffs such as bean curd, eggs and vegetables in their diet, ended up with inadequate nutrition, which worked against their process of recovery. Our conclusion is that diets should not be too strict or restricted, and that close attention should be paid to the condition of the patient's spleen and stomach, whether it is assimilating food well or showing syndromes of cold, heat, deficiency or excess. Only then can he get the best benefit from the therapies he is receiving.

As a general guideline, a cancer patient at the beginning of treatment need not have dietary restrictions. Instead he should try a small quantity of each kind of food. He would know after some time what kind of food agrees with him, based on the reaction of his digestive system to it and the presence or otherwise of any side effects of consuming the food. He should avoid food that does not agree with him and continue to eat food that he finds he can digest well and agrees with his body.

## **7.5. Exercise and Life Cultivation**

*Qigong* is one of the treasures of Chinese medical wisdom. From the point of view of traditional Chinese medicine, the enhancement of *qi* within one's own body through *qigong* exercises is a positive factor in cancer prevention and treatment. This observation applies to exercises practised on one's own body through

breathing and physical movement. Concerning claims of *qigong* healing by transferring “*qi*” from the healer to the patient, we believe that the psychological factor and the placebo effect could be relevant, but are not aware of clinical trials that conclusively demonstrate therapeutic effects.

Based on Professor Yu’s clinical experience, we believe *qigong*’s benefit to the human body works in the following ways:

1. *Qigong* assists in the flow of *qi* and blood. This is beneficial to cancer patients as a common condition accompanying this disease is stagnation of *qi* and blood stasis.
2. *Qigong* helps regulate the functions of internal organs, in particular digestive functions, breathing, and circulatory and neurological functions.
3. The mind is focused on the *dantian* in the lower abdominal region during *qigong* meditation. This helps the mind dispel negative thoughts and anxiety, helps the patient develop more self-confidence, and has a calming psychological effect on the patient which helps with his recovery.
4. *Qigong* exercises can help strengthen the immune system of the patient, assisting him to cope with his condition and possibly helping in his recovery.

In the lung cancer section in the last chapter, we mentioned the case of a patient who survived for 23 years after contracting late-stage lung cancer. We believe that his practice of *qigong* together with the use of Chinese herbal medications played a large role in his recovery.

Health preservation is but a major aspect of the wider concept of *yangsheng* or the cultivation of life. The medical classic *Huangdi neijing* laid down the basic rules of life cultivation that promotes longevity and helps prevent disease, including cancer.



These rules are also applicable to those who have already contracted cancer, by improving the quality of life and reducing the chances of relapse.

A celebrated passage from the *Neijing* on life cultivation is worth citing here:

The ancients knew the *tao* and understood the way of *yin* and *yang*, and how to exercise; moderation in food and drink, regularity in living habits, avoidance of overexertion, maintaining harmony between body and spirit.<sup>3</sup>

To know the *tao* and the way of *yin* and *yang* is to be able to go with the flow of nature and to achieve balance with the external environment and within the body as well. Exercise involves breathing as in *qigong* meditation and movement as in *taiji* and similar exercises. Moderation in food and drink involves observing good dietary habits and eating regular meals without excessive consumption of food and alcohol. Regularity in living habits would ideally follow the cycle of day and night, sleeping earlier in winter months when the sun sets early and rising early in summer months. Exercise and meals should be at fixed times and regular working hours observed rather than burning the midnight oil to complete urgent tasks. Overexertion, a problem endemic in busy cities like Beijing, London and Singapore, harms the body's *yuan qi*, and emotional factors associated with stress damage our vital organs. Excessive sexual indulgence also depletes *jing* and *qi* in the body and harms the kidney functions. Most important of all, maintaining a relaxed mind in harmony with the body is our best insurance against long-term ailments that develop insidiously in our bodies.

---

<sup>3</sup>The original Chinese text reads “上古之人，其知道者：法于阴阳，和与术数，饮食有节，起居有常：不妄作劳，故能形与神俱”。See *Yellow Emperor's Canon of Medicine* (2005).

The *Neijing* has another famous passage that elaborates on avoidance of illness:

Know when to avoid climatic stresses, live a placid life with plain needs, maintain the defensive forces in your body, stay in good spirits. When you do all this, how then could you possibly fall ill?<sup>4</sup>

This passage draws on the theory of TCM that attributes the fundamental causes of illness to climatic and emotional factors that we described in Chapter 2. Exposure to extremes of heat or cold, humidity, wind and dryness can cause harmful pathogens to invade our bodies and, if not repelled in good time, transform into internal pathogenic factors that bring about changing syndromes that become more entrenched with time if not treated and managed properly.

The *Neijing* here again emphasizes the importance of the mind, or spirit, in preventing illness and maintaining good health. This is achieved not just by avoiding and managing emotional stress, but also by engaging in activities that elevate the spirit and nourish the soul. In Chinese tradition, engagement in chess games, music (such as playing stringed instruments like the *qin*), painting and calligraphy and the enjoyment of poetry are forms of *yangsheng*, or the cultivation of life. *Yangsheng* is holistic. It requires us to cultivate the body through diet and exercise, regularity in living habits and avoidance of external pathogens, but also to cultivate the mind through relaxing and enjoyable activities. Such a holistic approach to life is our best defence against illness and gives us the best chance of avoiding the development of cancer cells in the body.

---

<sup>4</sup>虚邪贼风，避之有时，恬淡虚无，真气从之，精神内守，病安从来。

# HERBS USED IN CANCER THERAPY

For your easy reference, we have compiled in Table A.1 the herbs used for cancer therapy that have been mentioned in the book. Most herbs have several therapeutic effects although only one or two of these effects may be used within each prescription for a specific condition.

*Note: The term “sheng” (生) in front of the name of a herb indicates that it is used in raw unprocessed form; “jiao” (焦) indicates that it has been charred by a frying process. “Parched” also indicates that the herb has undergone the process of frying (炒) to enhance its effects for fortifying the spleen and strengthening qi.*

Table A.1. Herbs Used for Cancer Therapy.

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Ai Ye</i>	艾叶	<i>Folium Artemisiae Argyi</i>	Argy Wormwood Leaf	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Warms the meridians and expels cold</li> <li>2. Stops bleeding</li> <li>3. Regulates the menstrual cycle</li> <li>4. Prevents miscarriage</li> </ol>
<i>Ba Jiao Lian</i>	八角莲	<i>Dysosma pleiantha</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat and toxins</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation to remove blood stasis</li> </ol>
<i>Ba Qia</i>	菝葜	<i>Smilax china L</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Detoxification effect</li> <li>2. Dissipates blood stasis</li> <li>3. Expels wind and removes dampness</li> </ol>
<i>Ba Yue Zha/Yu Zhi Zi</i>	八月札/ 预知子	<i>Fructus Akebiae</i>	Akebia Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disperses stagnation of liver <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Regulates the stomach functions</li> <li>3. Improves blood circulation to relieve pain</li> <li>4. Softens and disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>5. Promotes diuresis</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Bu</i>	百部	<i>Radix Stemonae</i>	Sessile Stemona Root/Japanese Stemona Root/ Tuber Stemona	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the lung and relieves cough</li> <li>2. Kills parasites</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Bai He</i>	百合	<i>Bulbus Lili</i>	Lanceleaf Lily Bulb/Greenish Lily Bulb/Low Lily Bulb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and moistens the lung</li> <li>2. Clears heart heat and calms the mind</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Hua She She Cao</i>	白花蛇舌草	<i>Herba Hedyotidis Diffusae</i>	Spreading Hedyotis Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Removes dampness and promote diuresis</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Kou Ren/Bai Dou Kou</i>	白寇仁/ 白豆蔻	<i>Fructus Amomi Rotundus</i>	Round Cardamom Fruit/ Java Amomum Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness and relieves <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> <li>2. Warms the abdomen</li> <li>3. Relieves nausea and vomiting (anti-emetic effect)</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Shao/ Hang Shao/ Hanzhou Bai Shao</i>	白芍/ 杭芍	<i>Radix Paeoniae Alba</i>	White Peony Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the blood</li> <li>2. Retains <i>yin</i></li> <li>3. Soothes the liver and relieves pain</li> <li>4. Stops excessive perspiration</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Tou Weng</i>	白头翁	<i>Radix Pulsatillae</i>	Chinese Pulsatilla Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Cools the blood and treats dysentery</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Xian Pi</i>	白鲜皮	<i>Cortex Dictamni</i>	Densefruit Pittany Root-bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>2. Expels wind</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Bai Ying</i>	白英	<i>Herba Solani Lyrati</i>	Bittersweet Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and removes dampness</li> <li>2. Detoxification</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling</li> <li>4. Anti-cancer effect</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Zhi</i>	白芷	<i>Radix Angelicae Dahuricae</i>	Dahurian Angelica Root/ Taiwan Angelica Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expels cold and wind to relieve pain</li> <li>2. Clears the nasal passages to alleviate blocked nose</li> <li>3. Stops abnormal vaginal discharges (leucorrhoea) by removing dampness</li> <li>4. Reduces swelling of wounds</li> <li>5. Eliminates pus</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Zhu</i>	白术	<i>Rhizoma Atractylodis Macrocephalae</i>	Largehead Atractylodes Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fortifies the spleen and strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Promotes diuresis by removing dampness</li> <li>3. Stops perspiration (anhidrotic effect)</li> </ol>
<i>Bai Zi Ren</i>	柏子仁	<i>Semen Platycladi</i>	Chinese Arborvitae Kernel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heart heat and calms the mind</li> <li>2. Stimulates bowel movement</li> </ol>
<i>Ban Bian Lian</i>	半边莲	<i>Herba Lobeliae Chinensis</i>	Chinese Lobelia Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Reduces oedema</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Ban Mao</i>	斑蝥	<i>Mylabris</i>	Blister Beetle	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strong effect on improving blood circulation and removing blood stasis</li> <li>2. Counteract toxins to promote wound/ulcer/carbuncle healing</li> </ol>
<i>Ban Xia</i>	半夏	<i>Rhizoma Pinelliae</i>	Pinellia Tuber	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves dampness and phlegm</li> <li>2. Relieves nausea and vomiting</li> <li>3. Relieves stagnation and disperses masses/abnormal growth</li> </ol>
<i>Ban Zhi Lian</i>	半枝莲	<i>Herba Scutellariae Barbatae</i>	Barbed Skullcap Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Stops bleeding by removing blood stasis</li> <li>3. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>
<i>Bei Dou Gen</i>	北豆根	<i>Rhizoma Menispermii</i>	Asiatic Moonseed Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Expels wind</li> <li>3. Relieves pain</li> </ol>
<i>Bei Sha Shen</i>	北沙参	<i>Radix Glehniae</i>	Coastal Glehnia Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and clears lung heat</li> <li>2. Strengthens the stomach functions</li> <li>3. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Bian Xu</i>	萹蓄	<i>Herba Polygoni Avicularis</i>	Common Knotgrass Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>2. Kills parasites and relieves itch</li> </ol>
<i>Bie Jia Jiao</i>	鳖甲胶	<i>Colla Carapacis Trionycis</i>	Turtle Shell Glue	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>2. Anti-pyretic effect</li> <li>3. Softens and disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> </ol>
<i>Bu Gu Zhi</i>	补骨脂	<i>Fructus Psoraleae</i>	Malaytea Scurfpea Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the kidney and strengthens <i>yang</i></li> <li>2. Consolidates essence to treat enuresis and involuntary seminal emission</li> <li>3. Warms the spleen to relieve diarrhoea</li> <li>4. Anti-asthmatic effect</li> </ol>
<i>Cang Zhu</i>	苍术	<i>Rhizoma Atractylodis</i>	Swordlike Atractylodes Rhizome/Chinese Atractylodes Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness</li> <li>2. Strengthens the spleen functions</li> <li>3. Expels wind and cold</li> </ol>
<i>Cao He Che</i>	草河车	<i>Rhizoma Parisidis</i>	Yunnan Manyleaf Paris Rhizome/Chinese Paris Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Reduces swelling and relieves pain</li> <li>3. Cools the liver to relieve convulsions</li> </ol>
<i>Cao Jue Ming</i>	草决明	<i>Semen Cassiae</i>	Cassia Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and improves vision</li> <li>2. Promotes bowel movement</li> </ol>

(Continued)



Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Chai Hu</i>	柴胡	<i>Radix Bupleuri</i>	Chinese Thorowax Root/ Red Thorowax Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves exterior syndrome</li> <li>2. Anti-pyretic effect</li> <li>3. Disperses stagnation of liver <i>qi</i></li> <li>4. Uplifts <i>yang qi</i> to prevent the descent of <i>yang</i></li> </ol>
<i>Chan Su</i>	蟾酥	<i>Venenum Bufonis</i>	Toad venom	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Detoxification effect</li> <li>2. Relieve pain</li> <li>3. Restores consciousness</li> </ol>
<i>Chang Pu</i>	菖蒲	<i>Rhizoma Atractylodis</i>	Grassleaf Sweelflag Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restores consciousness</li> <li>2. Removes dampness and regulates stomach functions</li> <li>3. Calms the nerves and mind</li> <li>4. Improves alertness</li> </ol>
<i>Che Qian Cao</i>	车前草	<i>Herba Plantaginis</i>	Plantain Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>2. Relieves diarrhoea</li> <li>3. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> </ol>
<i>Chen Pi/Ju Pi</i>	陈皮 / 橘皮	<i>Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae</i>	Dried Tangerine Peel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Regulates <i>qi</i> in the abdomen and strengthens the spleen functions</li> <li>2. Resolves dampness and phlegm</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Chi Shao</i>	赤芍	<i>Radix Paeoniae Rubra</i>	Red Peony Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>2. Dissipates blood stasis to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Chou Chun Pi Gen</i>	臭椿皮根	<i>Cortex Ailanthi</i>	Tree-of-heaven Ailanthus Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and removes dampness</li> <li>2. Induces astringency to treat abnormal vaginal discharges</li> <li>3. Relieves diarrhoea</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> </ol>
<i>Chou Hu Lu</i>	抽葫芦	<i>Fructus Lagenariae</i>	Bottle Gourd Peel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>
<i>Chuan Bei Mu</i>	川贝母	<i>Bulbus Fritillariae Unibracteatae</i>	Unibract Fritillary Bulb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Moistens the lung to relieve cough</li> <li>3. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth and reduces carbuncle swelling</li> </ol>
<i>Chuan Lian Zi</i>	川楝子	<i>Fructus Toosendan</i>	Szechwan Chinaberry Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Relieves pain</li> <li>3. Kills parasites</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Chuan Shan Jia</i>	穿山甲	<i>Squama Manitis</i>	Pangolin Scales	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation and disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>2. Stimulates menstruation</li> <li>3. Promotes lactation</li> <li>4. Reduces swelling and induces pus discharge of wounds/ulcers/ carbuncles</li> </ol>
<i>Chuan Xiong</i>	川芎	<i>Rhizoma Ligustici Chuanxiong</i>	Szechwan Lovage Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Expels wind</li> <li>4. Relieves pain</li> </ol>
<i>Ci Wu Jia</i>	刺五加	<i>Radix Acanthopanax Senticosi</i>	Manyprickle Acanto-Panax Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fortifies the spleen and strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Tonifies the kidney</li> <li>3. Calms the nerves and mind</li> </ol>
<i>Da Fu Pi</i>	大腹皮	<i>Pericarpium Arecae</i>	Areca Peel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> <li>2. Reduces oedema</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Da Huang</i>	大黄	<i>Radix et Rhizoma Rhei</i>	Rhubarb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stimulates the bowel</li> <li>2. Clears heat and purges fire</li> <li>3. Cools the blood</li> <li>4. Detoxification effects</li> <li>5. Dissipates blood stasis to stimulate menstruation</li> </ol>
<i>Da Qing Ye</i>	大青叶	<i>Isatis Indigotica Fort.</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Cools blood to reduce petechiae</li> </ol>
<i>Da Zao</i>	大枣	<i>Fructus Jujubae</i>	Chinese Date	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the spleen and stomach functions and strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Nourishes the blood</li> <li>3. Calms the nerves and mind</li> </ol>
<i>Dai Zhe Shi</i>	代赭石	<i>Ochre Haematitum</i>	Red Ochre/ Haematite	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Suppresses liver <i>yang</i></li> <li>2. Promotes descent of <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Cools the blood to stop bleeding</li> </ol>
<i>Dan Pi</i>	丹皮	<i>Cortex Moutan</i>	Tree Peony Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation and removes blood stasis</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Dan Nan Xing</i>	胆南星	<i>Bile Arisaema</i>	Arisaema cum Bile	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Subdues endogenous wind to relieve convulsions</li> </ol>
<i>Dan Shen</i>	丹参	<i>Radix Salviae Miltiorrhizae</i>	Danshen Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Regulates menstruation</li> <li>3. Removes blood stasis to relieve pain</li> <li>4. Cools the blood</li> <li>5. Promotes healing of carbuncles</li> <li>6. Calms the mind</li> </ol>
<i>Dang Gui</i>	当归	<i>Radix Angelicae Sinensis</i>	Chinese Angelica	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enriches the blood</li> <li>2. Regulates menstruation</li> <li>3. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>4. Relieves pain</li> <li>5. Stimulates bowel movement</li> </ol>
<i>Dang Shen</i>	党参	<i>Radix Codonopsis</i>	Pilose Asiabell Root/Moderate Asiabell Root/Szechwon Tangshen Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Invigorates the spleen and lung functions</li> <li>2. Enriches the blood</li> <li>3. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Di Fu Zi</i>	地肤子	<i>Fructus Kochiae</i>	Belvedere Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>2. Clears heat and removes dampness</li> <li>3. Relieves itching</li> </ol>
<i>Dong Ling Cao</i>	冬凌草	<i>Rabdosia Rubescens</i>	Blushred Rabdosia	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Du Zhong</i>	杜仲	<i>Cortex Eucommiae</i>	Eucommia Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Strengthens tendons and bones</li> <li>3. Prevents miscarriage</li> </ol>
<i>E Jiao</i>	阿胶	<i>Colla Corii Asini</i>	Donkey-hide Glue	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enriches the blood</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>3. Moistens the lung</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> </ol>
<i>E Zhu</i>	莪术	<i>Rhizoma Curcumae</i>	Zedoary	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strong effect on improving blood circulation</li> <li>2. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Promotes digestion of residual food to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation</li> <li>4. Relieves pain</li> </ol>
<i>Fang Feng</i>	防风	<i>Radix Saposhnikovia</i>	Divaricate Saposhnikovia Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expels wind</li> <li>2. Removes dampness</li> <li>3. Relieves pain and convulsions</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Feng Fang	蜂房	<i>Nidus Vespa</i>	Honeycomb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Counteracts toxins to kill parasites</li> <li>2. Expels wind and relieves pain</li> </ol>
Feng Wei Cao	凤尾草	<i>Pteris multifida Poir.</i>	Chinese Brake/ Spider Brake Fern	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and removes dampness</li> <li>2. Cools the blood to stop bleeding</li> <li>3. Induces detoxification effect to reduce swelling</li> </ol>
Fu Ling/ Yun Ling	茯苓/云苓	<i>Poria</i>	Hoelen	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves oedema</li> <li>2. Removes dampness</li> <li>3. Strengthens the spleen</li> <li>4. Calms the mind</li> </ol>
Fu Pen Zi	覆盆子	<i>Fructus Rubi</i>	Palmleaf Raspberry Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Consolidates essence to treat enuresis and involuntary seminal emission</li> <li>2. Strengthens the liver and kidney functions</li> <li>3. Improves vision</li> </ol>
Fu Rong Ye	芙蓉叶	<i>Folium Hibisci Mutabilis</i>	Cotton Rose Hibiscus Leaf	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears lung heat</li> <li>2. Cools the blood</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling and induces pus discharge</li> </ol>
Fu Rong Hua	芙蓉花	<i>Hibiscus mutabilis L.</i>	Cotton Rose Hibiscus Flower	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>2. Reduces swelling and induces pus discharge</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Fu Xiao Mai</i>	浮小麦	<i>Fructus Triticis Levis</i>	Blighted Wheat	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Consolidates the exterior to stop perspiration</li> <li>2. Strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Clears heat</li> </ol>
<i>Gan Cao</i>	甘草	<i>Radix Glycyrrhizae</i>	Liquorice Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Fortifies the spleen and strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Resolves phlegm and relieves cough</li> <li>3. Relieves pain</li> <li>4. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>5. Regulates the functions of herbs in the formula</li> </ol>
<i>Gan Chan</i>	干蟾	<i>Bufo Bufo Gargarizans Cantor</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Resolves phlegm and relieves cough</li> <li>3. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>
<i>Gang Ban Gui</i>	杠板归	<i>Herba Polygoni Perfoliati</i>	Perfoliate Knotweed Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves oedema and cough</li> <li>2. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> </ol>
<i>Gou Ju Li</i>	枸橘李	<i>Poncirus Trifoliata</i>	Trifoliolate-orange Immature Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disperses the stagnation of liver <i>qi</i> and regulates the stomach functions</li> <li>2. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve pain</li> <li>3. Promotes digestion to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> </ol>



Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Gou Qi Zi	枸杞子	<i>Fructus Lycii</i>	Barbary Wolfberry Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Enriches the essence</li> <li>3. Improves vision</li> </ol>
Gu Ya	谷芽	<i>Fructus Setariae Germinatus</i>	Millet Sprout	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes digestion</li> <li>2. Strengthens the spleen and increase one's appetite</li> </ol>
Gua Lou	瓜蒌	<i>Fructus Trichosanthis</i>	Snakegourd Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Relieves <i>qi</i> stagnation in the chest</li> <li>3. Disperses masses</li> <li>4. Stimulates bowel movement</li> </ol>
Gui Ban Jiao	龟板胶	<i>Chinemys reevesii</i>	Tortoise Shell Glue	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and suppresses <i>yang</i></li> <li>2. Invigorates the kidney and strengthens bones</li> <li>3. Enriches the blood</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> </ol>
Gui Jian Yu	鬼箭羽	<i>Ramulus Euonymi</i>	Winged Euonymus Twig	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strong effect on improving blood circulation</li> <li>2. Stimulates menstruation</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> <li>4. Reduces swelling</li> <li>5. Kills parasites</li> </ol>
Hai Zao	海藻	<i>Sargassum</i>	Seaweed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves phlegm and softens the masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>2. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Han Lian Cao</i>	旱莲草	<i>Herba Ecliptae</i>	Yerbadetajo Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Cools the blood to stop bleeding</li> </ol>
<i>Hang Ju</i>	杭菊	<i>Chrysanthemum morifolium</i>	Chrysanthemum Flower (from Hangzhou)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expels exogenous wind-heat</li> <li>2. Suppresses liver <i>yang</i></li> <li>3. Clears liver heat and improves vision</li> <li>4. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> </ol>
<i>Hou Po/ Chuan Pu</i>	厚朴/川朴	<i>Cortex Magnoliae Officinalis</i>	Official Magnolia Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Relieves <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> </ol>
<i>Hou Po Hua</i>	厚朴花	<i>Flos Magnoliae Officinalis</i>	Official Magnolia Flower	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Similar therapeutic effects to but generally milder than <i>Hou Po</i> (厚朴)</li> </ol>
<i>Hu Huang Lian</i>	胡黄连	<i>Rhizoma Picrorhizae</i>	Figwortflower Picrorhiza Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves deficiency heat</li> <li>2. Clears heat due to infantile malnutrition</li> <li>3. Removes damp-heat</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Hu Zhang	虎杖	<i>Rhizoma Polygoni Cuspidati</i>	Giant Knotweed Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness to treat jaundice</li> <li>2. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>3. Relieves pain by removing blood stasis</li> <li>4. Relieves cough by resolving phlegm</li> </ol>
Huang Bai	黄柏	<i>Cortex Phellodendri</i>	Amur Corktree Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>2. Purges fire</li> <li>3. Promotes wound/ulcer healing via detoxification</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Frying Huang Bai helps to reduce its cold nature, hence softening its effects of clearing heat and purging fire. This prevents damage to the spleen and stomach, and makes it suitable for individuals with weak or impaired digestive systems.</i></p>
Huang Jing	黄精	<i>Rhizoma Polygonati</i>	Manyflower Solomonseal Rhizome/ Siberian Solomonseal Rhizome/King Solomonseal Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Invigorates <i>qi</i> and nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>2. Strengthens the spleen and kidney functions</li> <li>3. Nourishes the lung</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Huang Lian</i>	黄连	<i>Rhizoma Coptidis</i>	Golden Thread	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>2. Purges fire</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
<i>Huang Qi</i>	黄芪	<i>Radix Astragali</i>	Membranous Milkvetch Root/ Mongolian Milkvetch Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen functions</li> <li>2. Uplifts <i>yang qi</i> to prevent the descent of <i>yang</i></li> <li>3. Consolidates the exterior to strengthen the body's external defence</li> <li>4. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>5. Promotes healing of wounds/ulcers</li> </ol>
<i>Huang Qin</i>	黄芩	<i>Radix Scutellariae</i>	Baical Skullcap Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>2. Purges fire</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> <li>5. Prevents miscarriages</li> </ol>
<i>Huang Yao Zi</i>	黄药子	<i>Rhizoma Dioscoreae bulbiferae</i>	Airpotato Yam Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves phlegm and abnormal masses in the neck</li> <li>2. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> </ol>
<i>Huo Xiang</i>	藿香	<i>Herba Agastaches</i>	Wrinkled Gianthyssop Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness</li> <li>2. Relieves nausea and vomiting</li> <li>3. Clears summer-heat</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Ji Nei Jin</i>	鸡内金	<i>Endothelium Corneum Gigeriae Galli</i>	Chicken's Gizzard-membrane	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes digestion</li> <li>2. Strengthens the stomach functions</li> <li>3. Induces astringency to treat enuresis and involuntary seminal emission</li> </ol>
<i>Ji Xue Teng</i>	鸡血藤	<i>Caulis Spatholobi</i>	Suberect Spatholobus Stem	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enriches the blood and improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Regulates menstruation</li> <li>3. Nourishes the tendons to improve limb movements</li> </ol>
<i>Jiang Can</i>	僵蚕	<i>Bombyx Batryticatus</i>	Stiff Silkworm	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expels exogenous wind</li> <li>2. Subdues endogenous to relieve convulsions</li> <li>3. Resolves phlegm to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> </ol>
<i>Jiang Huang</i>	姜黄	<i>Rhizoma Curcumae Longae</i>	Turmeric	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Stimulates menstruation</li> <li>4. Relieves pain</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Jiao San Xian</i> ( <i>Jiao Mai Ya + Jiao Shang Zha + Jiao Shen Qu</i> )	焦三仙 (焦麦芽 + 焦山楂 + 焦神曲)	This is a term for three herbs in combination. Please refer to the individual herbs for English and Latin names.		1. Promotes digestion  <i>Note: "Jiao" indicates that the herbs are fried continuously until charred. This helps to further enhance their effects in promoting digestion.</i>
<i>Jie Geng</i>	桔梗	<i>Radix Platycodi</i>	Platycodon Root	1. Promotes the dispersion of lung <i>qi</i> 2. Dispels phlegm 3. Soothes sore throat 4. Induces pus discharge of lung carbuncles
<i>Jin Qian Cao</i>	金钱草	<i>Herba Lysimachiae</i>	Longhairly Antenoron Herb	1. Removes dampness to treat jaundice 2. Promotes diuresis 3. Induces detoxification effect to reduce swelling
<i>Ju Hong</i>	橘红	<i>Exocarpium Citri Grandis</i>	Pomelo Peel	1. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen 2. Removes dampness to resolve phlegm
<i>Ju Ye</i>	橘叶	<i>Citrus reticulata Blanco</i>	Tangerine Leaf	1. Disperses stagnation of liver <i>qi</i> 2. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth to reduce swelling

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Lao Ling Ke</i>	老菱壳	<i>Pedicellus et Pericarpium Trapae</i>	Water Caltrop Base and Peel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Induces astringency in the intestines to relieve diarrhoea</li> <li>2. Stops bleeding</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
<i>Lian Qiao</i>	连翘	<i>Fructus Forsythiae</i>	Weeping Forsythia Capsule	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth to reduce swelling</li> <li>3. Dispels exogenous wind-heat</li> </ol>
<i>Liu Ji Nu</i>	刘寄奴	<i>Herba Artemisiae Anomalae</i>	Diverse Wormwood Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dissipates blood stasis to relieve pain</li> <li>2. Stops bleeding which helps to promote healing of wounds</li> <li>3. Strong effect on improving blood circulation to stimulate menstruation</li> <li>4. Promotes digestion of residual food to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Long Gu	龙骨	<i>Os Draconis/ Fossilia Ossis Mastodi</i>	Dragon's Bones, Fossilized	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Calms the nerves and mind</li> <li>2. Suppresses liver yang</li> <li>3. Induces astringency in all body fluids</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: "Calcined" means the herb has undergone the process of calcination, whereby ores/minerals are heated to bring about thermal decomposition. During the thermal treatment, calcium oxide is formed. This is to enhance its astringency effect on body fluids.</i></p>
Long Kui	龙葵	<i>Herba Solani Nigri</i>	Black Nightshade Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Promotes diuresis</li> </ol>
Lou Lü	漏芦	<i>Radix Rhapontici</i>	Uniflower Swisscentaury Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Disperses masses to promote the healing of carbuncles</li> <li>3. Stimulates menstruation</li> <li>4. Promotes lactation</li> <li>5. Removes blockage in collaterals and soothes the tendons to improve limb movements</li> </ol>

(Continued)



Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Lu Jiao Jiao</i>	鹿角胶	<i>Cervus nippon Temminck/ C. elaphus L.</i>	Deer Horn Glue	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Enriches the blood and essence</li> </ol>
<i>Lu Lu Tong</i>	路路通	<i>Fructus Liquidambaris</i>	Beautiful Sweetgum Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes wind-dampness in the collaterals to relieve rheumatic conditions, hence improving limb movements</li> <li>2. Relieves oedema</li> <li>3. Stimulates menstruation</li> </ol>
<i>Luo Shi Teng</i>	络石藤	<i>Caulis Trachelospermi</i>	Chinese Starjasmine Stem	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes wind-dampness in the collaterals to relieve rheumatic conditions, hence improving limb movements</li> <li>2. Cools the blood</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling</li> </ol>
<i>Ma Dou Ling</i>	马兜铃	<i>Fructus Aristolochiae</i>	Dutchmanspipe Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears lung heat</li> <li>2. Resolves phlegm</li> <li>3. Anti-asthmatic effect and relieves cough</li> <li>4. Clears intestine heat to treat piles</li> </ol>
<i>Ma Lan Gen</i>	马蓝根	<i>Wedelia chinensis (Osbeck) Merr.</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory</li> <li>2. Dissipates blood stasis and reduce swelling</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Ma Qian Zi	马钱子	<i>Semen Strychni</i>	Nux Vomica	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disperse masses/ abnormal growth and reduces carbuncle swelling</li> <li>2. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
Ma Wei Lian	马尾连	<i>Radix et Rhizoma Thalictri</i>	Meadowrue Root and Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>2. Purges fire</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
Mai Ya	麦芽	<i>Fructus Hordei Germinatus</i>	Germinated Barley	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes digestion and strengthens the stomach functions</li> <li>2. Relieves breast distension</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Parched Mai Ya indicates that it has undergone frying (炒); this enhances the effect of relieving breast distension.</i></p>
Mao Zhua Cao	猫爪草	<i>Ranunculus ternatus Thunb</i>	Root of Catclaw Buttercup	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves phlegm to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>2. Induces detoxification effect to reduce swelling</li> </ol>
Mo Yu (She Liu Gu, Ju Ruo)	魔芋 (蛇六谷、蒟蒻)	<i>Amorphophallus konjac</i>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves phlegm to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>2. Detoxification effect</li> <li>3. Improves blood circulation to relieve pain</li> </ol>

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Mu Li</i>	牡蛎	<i>Concha Ostreae</i>	Oyster Shell	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Calms the nerves and mind</li> <li>2. Suppresses <i>yang</i> and strengthens <i>yin</i></li> <li>3. Softens and disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: "Calcined" means the herb has undergone the process by which ores/minerals are heated to bring about thermal decomposition. Calcium oxide is formed and this enhances the herb's astringency effect on body fluids.</i></p>
<i>Mu Tou Hui</i>	墓头回	<i>Patrinia heterophylla</i> Bunge/ <i>P. scabra</i> Bunge.	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Induces pus discharge to promote healing of carbuncles</li> <li>3. Removes blood stasis to relieve pain</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> <li>5. Stops abnormal vaginal discharges</li> </ol>
<i>Mu Xiang</i>	木香	<i>Radix Aucklandiae</i>	Costustoot	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve pain</li> <li>2. Strengthens the spleen functions to promote digestion</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Nü Zhen Zi	女贞子	<i>Fructus Ligustri Lucidi</i>	Glossy Privet Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Promotes growth of black hair</li> <li>3. Improves vision</li> </ol>
Pi Pa Ye	枇杷叶	<i>Folium Eriobotryae</i>	Loquat Leaf	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears lung heat to relieve cough</li> <li>2. Relieves nausea and vomiting</li> </ol>
Pu Gong Ying	蒲公英	<i>Herba Taraxaci</i>	Mongolian Dandelion Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth and reduces swelling</li> <li>3. Promotes diuresis</li> </ol>
Qi Ye Yi Zhi Hua/ Chong Lou	七叶一支花/ 重楼	<i>Paris polyphylla Smith</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Reduces swelling and relieves pain</li> <li>3. Resolves blood stasis and calms nerves</li> <li>4. Anti-asthmatic effect and relieves cough</li> </ol>
Qian Cao	茜草	<i>Radix Rubiae</i>	India Madder Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stops bleeding by cooling the blood and removing blood stasis</li> <li>2. Stimulates menstruation</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Qian Hu	前胡	<i>Radix Peucedani</i>	Whiteflower Hogfennel Root/ Common Hogfennel Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Dispels exogenous wind-heat</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Frying the herb with honey helps to enhance the effects of nourishing and moistening the lung and resolving phlegm.</i></p>
Qian Jin Zi	千金子	<i>Semen Euphorbiae</i>		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expels water to relieve oedema</li> <li>2. Strong improvement of blood circulation to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> </ol>
Qian Shi	芡实	<i>Semen Euryales</i>	Gordon Euryale Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the kidney</li> <li>2. Consolidates essence to treat involuntary seminal emission</li> <li>3. Strengthens the spleen functions to relieve diarrhoea</li> <li>4. Stops abnormal vaginal discharges (leucorrhoea) by removing dampness from the body</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Qing Pi</i>	青皮	<i>Pericarpium Citri Reticulatae Viride</i>	Green Tangerine Peel	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disperses stagnation of liver <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Promotes digestion of food to relieve <i>qi</i> stagnation in the abdomen</li> </ol>
<i>Qu Mai</i>	瞿麦	<i>Herba Dianthi</i>	Lilac Pink Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation and menstrual flow</li> </ol>
<i>Quan Xie</i>	全蝎	<i>Scorpio</i>	Scorpion	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Subdues endogenous wind to relieve convulsions</li> <li>2. Counteracts toxins to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>3. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Ren Dong Teng</i>	忍冬藤	<i>Caulis Lonicerae</i>	Japanese Honeysuckle Stem	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and expels wind</li> <li>2. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Ren Shen</i>	人参	<i>Panax Ginseng</i>	Ginseng	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Invigorates <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Tonifies the spleen and strengthens the lung</li> <li>3. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> <li>4. Calms the mind and improves alertness</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Rou Dou Kou</i>	肉豆蔻	<i>Terminalia Chebula</i>	Nutmeg	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Arrests diarrhea</li> <li>2. Arrests coughing</li> <li>3. Clears voice</li> </ol>
<i>Rou Gui</i>	肉桂	<i>Cortex Cinnamomi</i>	Cassia Bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinforces <i>yang</i></li> <li>2. Dispels cold to relieve pain</li> <li>3. Warms the meridians</li> <li>4. Directs warm <i>yang</i> back to the kidney</li> </ol>
<i>San Qi</i>	三七	<i>Panax Notoginseng</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes blood stasis to stop bleeding</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>3. Relieves pain</li> </ol>
<i>Sang Bai Pi</i>	桑白皮	<i>Cortex Mori</i>	White Mulberry Root-bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Purges lung fire</li> <li>2. Removes accumulated pleural fluids</li> <li>3. Anti-asthmatic effect</li> <li>4. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>
<i>Sang Zhi</i>	桑枝	<i>Ramulus Mori</i>	Mulberry Twig	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes wind-dampness in the collaterals to relieve rheumatic conditions, hence improving joint movements</li> </ol>
<i>Sha Ren</i>	砂仁	<i>Fructus Amomi</i>	Villous Amomum Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Resolves dampness and regulates qi</li> <li>2. Warms the abdomen to relieve nausea and vomiting</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Sha Yuan Zi</i>	沙苑子	<i>Semen Astragali Complanati</i>	Flatstem Milkvech Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the kidney and consolidates the essence</li> <li>2. Nourishes the liver</li> <li>3. Improves vision</li> </ol>
<i>Shan Ci Gu</i>	山慈菇	<i>Bulbus Iphigeniae Indicae</i>	Indian Iphigenia Bulb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Disperses masses to promote healing of carbuncles</li> </ol>
<i>Shan Dou Gen</i>	山豆根	<i>Radix Sophorae Tonkinensis</i>	Vietnamese Sophora Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Soothes sore throat</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling</li> </ol>
<i>Shan Yao</i>	山药	<i>Rhizoma Dioscoreae</i>	Common Yam Rhizome/ Winged Yam Rhizome/Wild Yam	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen functions and nourishes the stomach</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> <li>3. Strengthens the lung functions</li> <li>4. Tonifies the kidney</li> <li>5. Helps retention of <i>jing</i> (essence)</li> </ol>
<i>Shan Yu Rou</i>	山萸肉	<i>Fructus Corni</i>	Asiatic Cornelian Cherry Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Astringent action on body fluids</li> </ol>

(Continued)



Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Shan Zha</i>	山楂	<i>Fructus Crataegi</i>	Hawthorn Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotes digestion</li> <li>Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>Dissipates blood stasis</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Parched Shan Zha indicates that the herb has undergone frying to enhance its effects of promoting digestion and resolving blood stasis.</i></p>
<i>She Mei</i>	蛇莓	<i>Herba Duchesneae Indicae</i>	Indian Mock Strawberry Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>Reduces swelling</li> <li>Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
<i>Shen Qu</i>	神曲	—	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotes digestion and regulates the stomach functions</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Parched Shen Qu has undergone frying to enhance its effect of promoting digestion.</i></p>
<i>Sheng Di Huang</i>	生地黄	<i>Radix Rehmanniae</i>	Rehmannia Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>Nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>Promotes the production of body fluids</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Sheng Jiang</i>	生姜	<i>Zingiber officinale</i>	Ginger	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves the exterior syndrome and dispels cold</li> <li>2. Warms the spleen and stomach to relieve nausea and vomiting</li> <li>3. Warms the lung to relieve cough</li> </ol>
<i>Sheng Ma</i>	升麻	<i>Rhizoma Cimicifugae</i>	Large trifoliate Bugbane Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves the exterior syndrome</li> <li>2. Promotes the breakout of measles</li> <li>3. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>4. Uplifts <i>yang qi</i> to prevent the descent of <i>yang</i></li> </ol>
<i>Shi Hu</i>	石斛	<i>Herba Dendrobii</i>	Dendrobium	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the stomach functions</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> <li>3. Nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>4. Clears heat</li> </ol>
<i>Shi Jian Chuan</i>	石见穿	<i>Herba Salviae Chinensis</i>	Chinese Sage Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation and removes blood stasis</li> <li>2. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>3. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth and reduces swelling</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Shi Shang Bai</i>	石上柏	<i>Herba Selaginellae Doederleinii</i>	Doederlein's Spikemoss Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Expels wind and dampness</li> <li>3. Stops bleeding</li> <li>4. Anti-cancer effect</li> </ol>
<i>Shi Wei</i>	石韦	<i>Folium Pyrrosiae</i>	Pyrrosia Leaf	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>2. Clears lung heat and relieves cough</li> <li>3. Cools the blood to stop bleeding</li> </ol>
<i>Shou Wu Teng/Ye Jiao Teng</i>	首乌藤/ 夜交藤	<i>Caulis Polygoni Multiflori</i>	Tuber Fleeceflower Stem	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the blood and calms the mind</li> <li>2. Expels wind</li> <li>3. Clears the blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Shu Di Huang</i>	熟地黄	<i>Radix Rehmanniae Preparata</i>	Rehmannia Root (prepared with wine)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enriches the blood and nourishes <i>yin</i></li> <li>2. Supplements essence</li> </ol>
<i>Suan Zao Ren</i>	酸枣仁	<i>Semen Ziziphi Spinosae</i>	Spina Date Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the heart and strengthens the liver</li> <li>2. Calms the nerves and mind</li> <li>3. Astringent action to stop perspiration</li> </ol>
<i>Tai Zi Shen</i>	太子参	<i>Radix Pseudostellariae</i>	Heterophylly False Starwort Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reinforces <i>qi</i> and strengthens the spleen</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids to moisten the lung</li> </ol>

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Tao Ren</i>	桃仁	<i>Semen Persicae</i>	Peach Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation and removes blood stasis</li> <li>2. Promotes bowel movement</li> <li>3. Relieves cough</li> <li>4. Anti-asthmatic effect</li> </ol>
<i>Teng Li Gen</i>	藤梨根	<i>Radix Actinidiae Chinensis</i>	Actinidia Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Removes dampness and expels wind</li> <li>3. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>4. Stops bleeding</li> <li>5. Reduces swelling by inducing detoxification effect</li> </ol>
<i>Tian Hua Fen</i>	天花粉	<i>Radix Trichosanthis</i>	Mongolian Snakegourd Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and purges fire</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids to quench thirst</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling and induces pus discharge</li> </ol>
<i>Tian Kui Zi</i>	天葵子	<i>Radix Semiaquilegiae</i>	Muskroot-like Semiaquilegia Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>3. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth and reduces swelling</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Tian Ma</i>	天麻	<i>Rhizoma Gastrodiae</i>	Tall Gastrodia Tuber	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Subdues endogenous wind to relieve convulsions</li> <li>2. Suppresses liver <i>yang</i></li> <li>3. Expels wind</li> <li>4. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
<i>Tian Men Dong/Tian Dong</i>	天门冬/ 天冬	<i>Radix Asparagi</i>	Cochinchinese Asparagus Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> to moisten dryness</li> <li>2. Clears lung heat</li> <li>3. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> </ol>
<i>Tu Bei Mu</i>	土贝母	<i>Rhizoma Bolbostematis</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Disperses masses or abnormal growths</li> <li>2. Reduces swelling</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
<i>Tu Fu Ling</i>	土茯苓	<i>Rhizoma Smilacis Glabrae</i>	Glabrous Greenbrier Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Detoxification effect</li> <li>2. Removes dampness</li> <li>3. Promotes and improves joint movements</li> </ol>
<i>Tu Si Zi</i>	菟丝子	<i>Semen Cuscutae</i>	South Dodder Seed/Chinese Dodder Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the kidney and enriches essence</li> <li>2. Nourishes the liver to improve vision</li> <li>3. Relieves diarrhoea</li> <li>4. Prevents miscarriage</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Wang Bu Liu Xing/ Liu Xing Zi	王不留行/留行子	<i>Semen Vaccariae</i>	Cowherb Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation to stimulate menstruation</li> <li>2. Promotes lactation</li> <li>3. Promotes the healing of breast carbuncles</li> <li>4. Promotes diuresis</li> </ol>
Wu Gong	蜈蚣	<i>Scolopendra</i>	Centipede	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Subdues endogenous wind to relieve convulsions</li> <li>2. Counteracts toxins to disperse masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>3. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> </ol>
Wu Gu Teng	乌骨藤	<i>Fissistigma glaucescens (Hance) Merr.</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes wind-dampness</li> <li>2. Stimulates menstruation and improves blood circulation</li> <li>3. Stops bleeding</li> </ol>
Wu Wei Zi	五味子	<i>Fructus Schisandrae</i>	Chinese Magnoliavine Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Astringent action on body fluids</li> <li>2. Strengthens <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Promotes the production of body fluids</li> <li>4. Tonifies the kidney</li> <li>5. Calms the mind</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Wu Yao	乌药	<i>Radix Linderae</i>	Combined Spicebush Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve pain</li> <li>Warms the kidney and expels cold</li> </ol>
Xi Shu Gen	喜树根	<i>Camptotheca acuminata Decne</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Anti-cancer effect</li> <li>Clears heat</li> <li>Kills parasites</li> </ol>
Xia Ku Cao	夏枯草	<i>Spica Prunellae</i>	Common Selfheal Fruit-spike	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clears heat and purges fire</li> <li>Improves vision</li> <li>Disperses masses/ abnormal growth to reduce swelling</li> </ol>
Xing Ren	杏仁	<i>Semen armeniacae amarum</i>	Almond Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Relieves cough and dyspnea</li> <li>Moistens the large intestine to promote bowel movement</li> </ol>
Xu Chang Qing	徐长卿	<i>Radix Cynanchi Paniculati</i>	Paniculate Swallowwort Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Relieves pain</li> <li>Expels wind to relieve itch</li> <li>Detoxify toxins secreted by snake and insect</li> </ol>
Xue Li Guo	薛荔果	<i>Fructus Fici Pumilae</i>	Climbing Fig Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Expels wind and dampness</li> <li>Improves blood circulation to clear the blocked collaterals</li> <li>Reduces swelling via detoxification effect</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Ya Dan Zi	鸦胆子	<i>Fructus Bruceae</i>	Java Brucea Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Treats dysentery</li> <li>3. Treats malaria</li> <li>4. Removes warts</li> </ol>
Ya Zhi Cao	鸭跖草	<i>Commelina communis</i> L.	Asiatic Dayflower	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and purges fire</li> <li>2. Detoxifications effect</li> <li>3. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>
Yang Ti Gen	羊蹄根	<i>Rumex japonicus</i> Houtt./ <i>Rumex nepalensis</i> Spreng.	Japanese Dock Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Kills parasites to relieve itch</li> <li>3. Stimulates the bowel</li> <li>4. Cools the blood to stop bleeding</li> </ol>
Ye Ju Hua	野菊花	<i>Flos Chrysanthemi Indici</i>	Wild Chrysanthemum Flower	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> </ol>
Ye Pu Tao Gen	野葡萄根	<i>Radix Vitis Adstrictae</i>	Romanet Grape Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Promotes digestion to relieve abdomen distension</li> </ol>

(Continued)



Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Yi Yi Ren/ Yi Mi</i>	薏苡仁	<i>Semen Coicis</i>	Coix Seed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves oedema</li> <li>2. Removes dampness from the spleen and collaterals to relieve diarrhoea and improve limb movements respectively</li> <li>3. Strengthens the spleen functions</li> <li>4. Clears heat and induces pus discharges from carbuncles</li> </ol>
<i>Yi Zhi Ren</i>	益智仁	<i>Fructus Alpiniae Oxyphyllae</i>	Sharpleaf Galangal Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Warms the kidney to consolidate essence, which helps to treat enuresis, polyuria and involuntary seminal emission</li> <li>2. Warms the spleen to increase one's appetite and alleviate drooling (excessive saliva)</li> </ol>
<i>Yin Chen</i>	茵陈	<i>Herba Artemisiae Scopariae</i>	Virgate Wormwood Herb/ Capillary Wormwood Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness to treat jaundice</li> <li>2. Induces detoxification effect to promote healing of wounds/ulcers</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Yin Hua</i>	银花	<i>Flos Lonicerae</i>	Honeysuckle Flower	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Disperses exogenous wind-heat</li> </ol>
<i>Yu Jin</i>	郁金	<i>Radix Curcumae</i>	Turmeric Root-tuber	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation to relieve pain</li> <li>2. Promotes the flow of liver <i>qi</i> to relieve stagnation, which helps to treat depression</li> <li>3. Clears heart heat and cools the blood</li> <li>4. Improves the functions of the gallbladder which helps in the treatment of jaundice</li> </ol>
<i>Yu Xing Cao</i>	鱼腥草	<i>Herba Houttuyniae</i>	Heartleaf Houttuynia Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Induces pus discharge which promotes the healing of carbuncles</li> <li>3. Promotes diuresis</li> </ol>
<i>Yu Zhu</i>	玉竹	<i>Rhizoma Polygonati Odorati</i>	Fragrant Solomonseal Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> to moisten dryness</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids to quench thirst</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Yuan Hu/ Yan Hu Suo</i>	元胡/延胡索	<i>Rhizoma Corydalis</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>2. Promote the flow of <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Relieves pain</li> </ol>
<i>Yuan Zhi</i>	远志	<i>Cortex et Radix Polygalae</i>	Thinleaf Milkwort Root-bark	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Calms the mind and improves intelligence</li> <li>2. Dispels phlegm</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling and promotes the healing of carbuncles</li> </ol>
<i>Zao Jiao Ci</i>	皂角刺	<i>Spina Gleditsiae</i>	Chinese Honeylocust Spine	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reduces swelling and induces pus discharge</li> <li>2. Expels wind</li> <li>3. Kills parasites</li> </ol>
<i>Zao Xiu</i>	蚤休	<i>Paris Polyphylla</i>	Flea; Herba Violae	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and toxins</li> <li>2. Reduces swelling and relieves pain</li> <li>3. Cools liver</li> </ol>
<i>Ze Lan</i>	泽兰	<i>Herba Lycopi</i>	Hirsute Shiny Bugleweed	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation to regulate menstruation</li> <li>2. Removes blood stasis to aid in the healing of carbuncles</li> <li>3. Relieves oedema</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Ze Xie</i>	泽泻	<i>Rhizoma Alismatis</i>	Oriental Water Plantain Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes dampness to relieve oedema</li> <li>2. Clears heat</li> </ol>
<i>Zhe Bei Mu</i>	浙贝母	<i>Bulbus Fritillariae Thunbergii</i>	Thunberg Fritillary Bulb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> <li>3. Promotes the healing of carbuncles</li> </ol>
<i>Zhi Bai (Zhi Mu and Huang Bai)</i>	知柏 (知母和 黄柏)	Please refer to each of the two herbs.		
<i>Zhi Ke/Zhi Qiao</i>	枳壳	<i>Fructus Aurantii</i>	Bitter Orange	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes the flow of <i>qi</i> to relieve stagnation in the chest and abdomen</li> <li>2. Relieves abdomen distension</li> </ol>
<i>Zhi Mu</i>	知母	<i>Rhizoma Anemarrhenae</i>	Common Anemarrhena Rhizome	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and purges fire</li> <li>2. Promotes the production of body fluids to moisten dryness</li> </ol> <p><i>Note: Frying Zhi Mu helps to reduce its effects of clearing heat and purging fire. This prevents damage to the spleen and stomach for individuals who have weak or impaired digestive systems.</i></p>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
Zhi Zi	梔子	<i>Fructus Gardeniae</i>	Cape Jasmine Fruit	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Purges fire to ease irritability</li> <li>2. Removes damp-heat</li> <li>3. Cools the blood</li> <li>4. Detoxification effect</li> </ol>
Zhong Jie Feng	肿节风	<i>Herba Sarcandrae</i>	Glabrous Sarcandra Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Expels wind</li> <li>3. Clears blocked collaterals to relieve pain</li> <li>4. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>5. Disperses masses/ abnormal growth</li> </ol>
Zhu Ru	竹茹	<i>Caulis Bambusae in Taeniam</i>	Bamboo Shavings	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clears heat and resolves phlegm</li> <li>2. Relieves nausea and vomiting</li> <li>3. Eases irritability</li> </ol>
Zhu Yang Yang	猪殃殃	<i>Herba Galii Teneri</i>	Tender Catchweed Bedstraw Herb	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>2. Promotes diuresis</li> <li>3. Reduces swelling</li> </ol>
Zi Cao	紫草	<i>Radix Arnebiae/ Radix Lithospermi</i>	Sinkiang Arnebia Root/Redroot Gromwell Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes heat in the blood</li> <li>2. Improves blood circulation</li> <li>3. Detoxification effect</li> <li>4. Promotes the breakout of measles</li> </ol>

(Continued)

Table A.1. (Continued).

Name in Pinyin	Chinese Name	Latin Name	Common Name	Therapeutic Functions
<i>Zi He Che</i>	紫河车	<i>Placenta Hominis</i>	Human Placenta	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Tonifies the kidney and strengthens essence</li> <li>2. Nourishes the blood and strengthens <i>qi</i></li> </ol>
<i>Zi Teng</i>	紫藤	<i>Wistaria sinensis Sweet</i>	Chinese wisteria	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves edema</li> <li>2. Stem has anti-cancer effect</li> </ol>
<i>Zi Wan/Zi Yuan</i>	紫菀	<i>Radix Asteris</i>	Tatarian Aster Root	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the lung</li> <li>2. Resolves phlegm and relieves cough</li> </ol>
<i>Zong Lü Zi</i>	棕榈子	<i>Fructus Trachycarpi Fortunei</i>	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stops bleeding</li> <li>2. Induces astringency in the intestines</li> <li>3. Consolidates essence</li> </ol>

# COMMON FOODS WITH ANTI-CANCER EFFECTS\*

The term “anti-cancer” (*kang ai* 抗癌) refers to the possibility of a herb inhibiting the growth of cancer cells; “preventing cancer” (*fang ai* 防癌) refers to the possibility of the herb contributing to the prevention of cancer. The evidence based on clinical trials for anti-cancer and cancer-preventing effects have not, in some instances, been firmly established or widely accepted, although in these instances there may be reasonable grounds based on preliminary or anecdotal evidence for believing that they have these effects. Table A.2 lists some common foods with anti-cancer effects.

---

\* This list has been adapted from a table presented in Chinese from Professor Yu’s 2008 book, *Yu Rencun Zhongxiyi Jiehe Zhongliu Xue* 郁仁存中西医结合肿瘤学, Peking Union Medical College Press, pp. 457–460.

**Table A.2. Common Foods with Anti-Cancer Effects.**

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
<b>Staple</b>			
Soybean 大豆	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves stagnation in the upper abdomen, and promotes downward movement of <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Reduces swelling</li> <li>3. Detoxifies</li> </ol>	High protein content of 36.6%, and rich in selenium. Incidence of malignancy occurring in gastric carcinoma dramatically decreases with long-term consumption of soybean by-products, such as tofu.
Wheat 小麦	Sweet in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the kidney and heart</li> <li>2. Relieves dysphoria (irritability)</li> <li>3. Quenches thirst</li> </ol>	Non-specific boost in the immune system inhibits the development and progression of cancer. Polysaccharides in wheat bran have an inhibitory effect on the growth of sarcoma in mice.
Sesame 芝麻	Neutral-sweet in taste.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the kidney</li> <li>2. Invigorates the five organs: kidney, heart, liver, spleen and lung</li> </ol>	Rich in protein. Antioxidant composition found in sesame is able to inhibit the development of tumours in animals.
Sweet potato 红薯	—	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>qi</i> in the body</li> <li>2. Nourishes the spleen and kidney</li> </ol>	Contains carotene, vitamin C, as well as eight other essential amino acids that the human body needs; has unique treatment effects for breast and colon cancer.

(Continued)



Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
<b>Vegetables</b>			
Sword bean 刀豆	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dispels cold in the upper abdomen, and promotes downward movement of <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Anti-emetic effect (prevents vomiting)</li> <li>3. Promotes defecation</li> <li>4. Nourishes the kidney</li> </ol>	Sword bean contains haemagglutinin which converts lymphocytes into lymphoblasts. This in turn has an inhibitory effect on tumour development.
Fennel 小茴香	Acrid in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dispels cold in the kidney</li> <li>2. Strengthens the stomach, and promotes <i>qi</i> circulation</li> </ol>	Experimental studies have shown that fennel has an inhibitory effect on solid tumours, as well as the ability to increase white blood cell count.
Winter melon 冬瓜	Bland-sweet in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Promotes elimination of heat through diuresis (urination)</li> <li>2. Detoxifies</li> <li>3. Dispels phlegm</li> </ol>	Cucurbitacins that are contained in winter melon have an anti-cancer effect, preventing cancer from developing.
Cabbage 甘蓝 (包心菜、洋白菜)	Bland in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Aids in digestion through strengthening the spleen</li> <li>2. Relieves stagnation in the chest</li> <li>3. Relieves dysphoria (irritability)</li> <li>4. Alleviates alcohol hangover, and promotes downward movement of <i>qi</i></li> </ol>	Cabbage contains indole-compounds, which inhibit the development of tumours in the animal gastrointestinal system. In addition, cabbage has an inhibitory effect on the development of human colon cancer.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Kidney bean 四季豆	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	Strengthens the spleen and stomach	Plant haemagglutinin that is contained in kidney bean has an inhibitory effect on oesophageal cancer and hepatic cell line in humans, as well as an inhibitory effect on leukaemia development in mice; in addition, plant haemagglutinin is able to activate haemopoiesis in bone marrow, and interferon production in macrophages.
Tomato 西红柿	Sweet-sour in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat, and quenches thirst</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>yin</i>, and eliminates heat in the blood</li> <li>3. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>4. Promotes diuresis (urination)</li> </ol>	It can prevent the occurrence of prostate cancer.
Bean sprout 豆芽	Sweet in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i>, and eliminates heat</li> <li>2. Promotes diuresis (urination)</li> <li>3. Detoxifies</li> </ol>	There is an interferon-inducing element in bean sprout, which not only has an anti-viral function, but also an inhibitory effect on tumour development and progression.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Eggplant 茄子	Sweet in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Improves blood circulation and removes stasis (blood clot)</li> <li>2. Alleviates pain and swelling</li> <li>3. Relieves stagnation in the intestines, and promotes diuresis (urination)</li> </ol>	A certain non-toxic substance extracted from eggplant has a therapeutic effect on gastric, renal and cervical carcinoma.
Bitter gourd 苦瓜	Bitter in taste; cold in nature. Non-toxic.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat and improves vision</li> <li>2. Detoxifies</li> </ol>	Experimental studies have shown that bitter gourd is able to activate macrophages and boost the animal immune system. It is also shown that bitter gourd has an inhibitory effect on lymphoma.
Pumpkin 番瓜	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen and stomach</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Anti-inflammatory effect</li> <li>4. Alleviates pain</li> <li>5. Detoxifies</li> <li>6. Toxic effect on parasites</li> </ol>	Pumpkin contains mannitol, a substance that promotes defecation. This reduces the toxins contained in the stools, which in turn reduces the harmful effects that these toxins may cause.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Hyacinth bean 扁豆	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the spleen, and alleviates diarrhoea</li> <li>2. Eliminates heat and dampness</li> </ol>	Plant haemagglutinin that is contained in hyacinth bean has the ability to boost the human immune system. It can also inhibit the growth of experimental tumours.
Carrot 胡萝卜	Acrid-sweet in taste; slightly warm in nature. Non-toxic.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen, and promotes circulation of <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Strengthens the stomach and relieves stagnation in the chest</li> </ol>	Carotene has the ability to prevent the occurrence of gastric, intestinal and nasopharyngeal carcinoma.
Cucumber 黄瓜	Sweet in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat</li> <li>2. Detoxifies</li> <li>3. Promotes diuresis (urination)</li> <li>4. Promotes secretion of body fluids</li> </ol>	Cucumber is rich in cucurbitacins, which exhibit an inhibitory effect on the growth of experimental tumours. It has some preventive effects on the occurrence of oesophageal cancer.
Onion 葱	Acrid in taste; slightly warm in nature. Non-toxic.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Induces perspiration to relieve exterior syndrome</li> <li>2. Dispels cold, and activates <i>yang</i> in body</li> </ol>	It has the ability to reduce nitrite concentration in the stomach, thereby preventing the occurrence of gastric carcinoma. It also contains selenium, a trace element which exhibits a preventive effect on various carcinomas.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
<b>Fruits</b>			
Red date 大枣	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen and stomach</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i> and blood</li> </ol>	It contains a high concentration of vitamin C, which acts to prevent the occurrence of various tumours. It can also inhibit the carcinogenic effects brought about by guanidine nitrate in experimental tumours.
Hawthorn 山楂	Sweet-sour in taste; slightly warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Aids in digestion through strengthening the stomach</li> <li>2. Promotes blood circulation and removes stasis (blood clot)</li> </ol>	Flavonoids that are contained in hawthorn are able to inhibit the active components of tumours; hawthorn decoction can also prolong the lives of tumour-bearing animals. Water extract from hawthorn has an inhibitory effect on ascites carcinoma and cervical carcinoma.
Fig 无花果	Sweet-sour in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen, and alleviates diarrhoea</li> <li>2. Nourishes the lung, and eliminates heat in the pharynx</li> </ol>	Fig has been shown to have an inhibitory effect on tumours in various animal models, such as transplanted sarcoma in rats, ascites carcinoma in mice and spontaneous mastocarcinoma in mice. It is able to activate an immune system cascade.

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Plum 乌梅	Astringent-sour in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reduces swelling and solid masses</li> <li>2. Promotes healing of sores</li> <li>3. Toxic effect on parasites</li> <li>4. Induces astringency in the lung and intestines</li> </ol>	Water extract from plum has an inhibitory effect on various experimental tumours, such as sarcoma and ascites carcinoma in mice. Plum has also been shown to boost the immune system in humans.
Almond 杏仁	Bitter in taste; warm in nature. Contains low level of toxicity.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Relieves cough and asthma</li> <li>2. Promotes defecation through lubrication of the intestines</li> </ol>	Warm water extract of almond is able to inhibit human cervical carcinoma JTC-26. Active components in almond are also able to inhibit the growth of both sarcoma in rats and Ehrlich ascites carcinoma in mice.
Pomelo 柚子 (文旦)	Sweet-sour in taste; cold in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Aids in digestion</li> <li>2. Dispels phlegm</li> <li>3. Strengthens the spleen</li> <li>4. Promotes circulation of <i>qi</i>, and alleviates alcohol hangover</li> </ol>	Pomelo extract has exhibited inhibitory rates of 70–90% on human cervical carcinoma. Naringin in grapefruits can effectively protect mice from radiation injury, thereby suggesting the possibility of pomelo being used as a medicine in chemotherapy, against radiation injury.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Banana 香蕉	Sweet in taste; cold in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat and promotes diuresis (urination)</li> <li>2. Promotes defecation</li> <li>3. Reduces blood pressure</li> </ol>	Banana extract has been shown to exhibit a drastic inhibitory effect on the active components of carcinogens, such as aflatoxin and benzopyrene. Bananas are rich in trace element magnesium, which can prevent cancer from occurring.
Strawberry 草莓	Sweet-sour in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the lung, and promotes secretion of body fluids</li> <li>2. Strengthens the spleen</li> <li>3. Alleviates alcohol hangover</li> </ol>	Strawberry is rich in vitamin C, which has an inhibitory effect on the production of potent carcinogens, nitrosamines. Strawberry amines contained in strawberries are effective in the treatment of leukaemia and aplastic anaemia.
Water chestnut 菱角	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat and promotes secretion of body fluids</li> <li>2. Relieves dysphoria (irritability) and cough</li> <li>3. Strengthens the spleen, and nourishes <i>qi</i></li> </ol>	Water chestnuts have been used by common folks in the treatment of oesophageal carcinoma, gastric carcinoma, cervical carcinoma and mastocarcinoma. The fruit of the water chestnut has an inhibitory effect on ascitic hepatoma AH-13.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Kiwifruit 猕猴桃	Sweet-sour in taste; cool in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat and promotes diuresis (urination)</li> <li>2. Promotes secretion of body fluids, and relieves dryness in the body</li> </ol>	Kiwifruit can block the carcinogenic effects of nitroso compounds. It can also improve the appetite of patients suffering from tumours, as well as maintain the blood count of patients undergoing chemotherapy.
<b>Edible Fungi</b>			
Black fungus 云耳 (黑木耳)	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen, and nourishes <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Nourishes the lung</li> <li>3. Invigorates the brain</li> <li>4. Nourishes the blood</li> </ol>	Polysaccharides contained in black fungus have an inhibitory effect on sarcoma S <sub>180</sub> in animals. It also has a therapeutic effect on cervical carcinoma and vaginal carcinoma.
Oyster mushroom 平菇	Sweet in taste; slightly warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen, and relieves dampness</li> <li>2. Relaxes muscles and joints by promoting circulation of blood</li> </ol>	Polysaccharides contained in oyster mushrooms have an inhibitory rate of 75.3% on sarcoma S <sub>180</sub> in mice. Constant intake of oyster mushrooms can increase metabolism, and regulate autonomic functions in humans.

(Continued)



Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Mushroom 香菇	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen and kidney</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i>, and stimulates appetite</li> </ol>	Polysaccharides contained in mushrooms have a good inhibitory effect on leukaemia, as well as on other tumours, such as oesophageal, gastric, colorectal, lung and hepatic carcinoma. It is currently being used clinically, in the form of intravenous treatment.
White fungus 银耳 (白木耳)	Bland-sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and the lung</li> <li>2. Strengthens the stomach, and promotes secretion of body fluids</li> <li>3. Strengthens the kidney</li> </ol>	Polysaccharides contained in white fungus have been found to increase the tolerance level to radiation and chemical drugs, as well as enhance the immune system in experimental animals. It is able to inhibit tumour S <sub>180</sub> through these mechanisms.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Hedgehog fungus 猴头菌	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen, and nourishes <i>qi</i></li> <li>2. Invigorates the five organs: kidney, lung, heart, liver and spleen</li> </ol>	Polysaccharides and the polypeptide component contained in hedgehog fungus exhibit an inhibitory effect on gastric carcinoma and tumour S <sub>180</sub> in mice. It has been shown to inhibit the synthesis of DNA and RNA in cancer cells, <i>in vitro</i> . It is also able to enhance the immune system in humans.
<b>Meat, Poultry, Seafood</b>			
Clam 文蛤	Salty in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat in the lung</li> <li>2. Dispels phlegm</li> <li>3. Disperses solid masses</li> </ol>	Extracts of clam liver have been shown to prolong the lives of animals with leukaemia. Extracts of sterigmatocystin clams exhibit an inhibitory effect on tumour S <sub>180</sub> , Ehrlich ascites carcinoma and leukaemia L <sub>1210</sub> in animal models.
Tortoise 乌龟	Sweet-sour in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes the kidney and liver</li> <li>2. Disperses wind syndrome and eliminates dampness syndrome</li> </ol>	It is able to boost the immune system, and has an inhibitory effect on tumours in animal models, such as tumour S <sub>180</sub> and ascitic hepatoma in mice.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Turtle 甲鱼 (团鱼、水鱼)	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the liver and kidney</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i> and blood</li> </ol>	The rich collagen molecule content of turtles can improve the nutritional status and metabolism rate, thereby alleviating cachexia in cancer patients. The shell of turtles has an inhibitory effect on experimental tumours such as hepatic carcinoma and gastric carcinoma.
Chicken 鸡肉	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the stomach and spleen</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Invigorates essence of the kidney</li> </ol>	Some studies have claimed that using 100°C boiling water to cook chicken for 2 minutes is able to kill the cancer cells that may be contained in the chicken.
Oyster 牡蛎	Salty-sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and blood</li> <li>2. Invigorates the heart</li> <li>3. Tranquilizes the mind</li> </ol>	Water extract of oyster has a direct inhibitory effect on tumours in voles. Oyster contains elements that have a cytotoxic effect on experimental tumours.
Hairtail 带鱼	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Warms the stomach</li> <li>2. Provides nourishment for deficiency syndromes</li> <li>3. Moisturizes the skin</li> </ol>	6-Thioguanine is an anti-cancer compound that can be found in the scales of hairtails, which can be effectively used for the treatment of leukaemia and other malignant tumours.

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Sea cucumber 海参	Sweet in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the kidney, and invigorates essence of the kidney</li> <li>2. Boosts male vitality</li> <li>3. Dispels phlegm</li> </ol>	Holothurin contained in sea cucumber is able to inhibit the growth of some experimental tumours, such as tumour S <sub>180</sub> and Ehrlich ascites carcinoma.
Earthworm 蚯蚓	Salty in taste; cold in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat by relieving stagnation of <i>qi</i> in the liver</li> <li>2. Alleviates asthma by promoting circulation of blood</li> </ol>	It has an inhibitory effect on colorectal carcinoma, hepatic carcinoma and cervical carcinoma—26 in humans.
Crab 螃蟹	Salty in taste; cold in nature.	<p>Crab meat:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat, and disperses solid masses</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>yin</i> and promotes circulation of blood</li> <li>3. Promotes healing of external injuries</li> </ol> <p>Crab shell:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Eliminates heat</li> <li>2. Detoxifies</li> <li>3. Removes stasis (blood clot) and disperses solid masses</li> </ol>	Crab shell has been shown to be effective in the treatment of mastocarcinoma.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Shark 鲨鱼	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Strengthens the spleen</li> <li>2. Nourishes <i>qi</i></li> <li>3. Invigorates blood</li> </ol>	Shark is rich in vitamin A, which can help in the prevention of cancer. Active components extracted from shark's fin can prevent the occurrences of experimental tumours in animals.
<b>Others</b>			
Pollen 花粉	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	Reduces body weight, and prolongs life span on long-term usage	In a survey carried out in France, it was found that only 1 out of 1000 apiarists died from cancer. Animal experiments have shown that pollen has the ability to inhibit the growth of cancer cells.
Honey 蜂蜜	Sweet in taste; neutral in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Invigorates <i>qi</i>, and relieves dryness in the body</li> <li>2. Nourishes the lung, and relieves cough</li> <li>3. Detoxifies</li> <li>4. Alleviates pain</li> </ol>	Ether-soluble compounds contained in honey have an inhibitory effect on experimental tumours, such as leukaemia, lymphoma, mastocarcinoma and Ehrlich ascites carcinoma.

(Continued)

Table A.2. (Continued).

Name of Food	Properties	TCM Functions	Findings from Modern Research Studies
Yoghurt 酸奶	—	—	Yoghurt has been shown to have an inhibitory effect on some transplanted experimental tumours.
Royal jelly 蜂王浆	Sweet in taste; slightly warm in nature.	Has strong nourishing effect	Royal jelly has an inhibitory effect on experimental tumours, such as leukaemia, lymphoma, mastocarcinoma and Ehrlich ascites carcinoma. It can also prolong the lives of mice suffering from cancer.
Vinegar 醋	Bitter-sour in taste; warm in nature.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Removes stasis (blood clot), and stops bleeding</li> <li>2. Detoxifies</li> <li>3. Toxic effects on parasites</li> </ol>	It can inhibit the carcinogenic effect of aflatoxin.

# REFERENCES

- Campbell TC and Campbell TM. (2007) *The China Study*, Ben Bella Books, Dallas.
- Chai K. (ed.) (2007) *Fundamental Theory of Traditional Chinese Medicine*, People's Medical Publishing Home, Beijing.
- Esselystyn CB. (2008) *Prevent and Reverse Heart Disease*, Avery, New York.
- Farquhar J. (1994) *Knowing Practice: The Clinical Encounter in Chinese Medicine*, Westview Press, Boulder, CO.
- Hong H. (2009) Kuhn and the two cultures of Chinese and Western medicine. *Journal of Cambridge Studies*, Vol. 4, No. 3, pp. 10–36. Association of Cambridge Studies, Cambridge, UK.
- Kuriyama S. (1999) *The Expressiveness of the Body*, Zone Books, New York.
- Lei S. (1999) *When Chinese Medicine Encountered the State, 1910–1949*, PhD dissertation, University of Chicago.
- Neese RM and Williams GC. (1996) *Why We Get Sick: The New Science of Darwinian Medicine*, Vintage Books, New York.
- Ou J. (2005) *Dang Zhongyi Yushang Xiyi 当中医遇上西医 (When Chinese Medicine Meets Western Medicine)*, Sanlian Shudian, Hong Kong.
- Oxford Concise Medical Dictionary, 4th Edition*. (2007) Oxford University Press.
- Scheid V. (2002) *Chinese Medicine in Contemporary China: Plurality and Synthesis*, Duke University Press, Durham, NC.
- Schwartz V. (1986) The enduring challenge of enlightenment, in *The Chinese Enlightenment*, University of California Press, Berkeley, CA, pp. 283–302.

- Sivin N. (1987) *Traditional Medicine in Contemporary China*, University of Michigan Press, Ann Arbor, MI.
- Taylor K. (2005) *Chinese Medicine in Early Communist China, 1945–1963*, Routledge Curzon, New York.
- Unschuld P. (2003) *Huang Di Nei Jing Su Wen: Nature, Knowledge, Imagery in an Ancient Chinese Medical Text*, University of California Press, Berkeley, CA.
- Wang X. (ed.) (2001) *Zhongyi Jichu Lilun 中医基础理论*, Renmin Weisheng Chubanshe, Beijing, p. 44.
- Wu C. (ed.) (2002) *Basic Theory of Traditional Chinese Medicine*, Shanghai University of TCM Publishing House, Shanghai (in Chinese with English translation).
- Yellow Emperor's Canon of Medicine 黄帝内经*. (2005) Xian World Publishing Company.
- Yu R, et al. (2007) *Yu Rencun 郁仁存*, Zhongguo Zhongyiyao Chuban She, Beijing.



# INDEX

- Blood 21
- Cancer prevention 59
- Cancers 60
  - Breast 94
  - Colorectal 117
  - Leukemia 149
  - Liver 26, 107
  - Lung 27, 75
  - Lymphoma 156
  - Pancreatic 153
  - Prostate 139
  - Stomach 127
- Causes of illness 30
- Channels and collaterals 23
- Chemotherapy 67
- Chinese herbs 45
- Contraindications and toxicities 48
- Contributing factors 60
- Diagnosis of illness 28
- Diet 171
  - for cancer patients 175
- Differentiating syndromes 34
- Exercise 171
- Fangji 54
- Foods with anti-cancer effects 195
- Health and therapy 39
- Health cultivation 171
- Heart 26
- Herb classification 51
- Herb processing 48
- Herbs used in cancer therapy 153
- Huangdi Neijing 10, 12, 180
- Kidney 25

Life cultivation 178

Lung 27

Materia Medica 45

Meridians 23

Neijing 12, 180

Nutrient qi 21

Nutrition 171

Nutritional therapy 173

Organ systems 24

Pectoral qi 21

Prescriptions 54

Pre-surgery care 69

Primordial qi 21

Qi 18

Qigong 178

Radiotherapy 66

Seven emotions 32

Shanghan Lun 11

Six exogenous factors 31

Spleen or pi 25

Surgery 68

Syndrome differentiation 16

The four examinations

35

Traditional Chinese medicine

(TCM) 7, 12

approach to cancer

management 4

as science 42

Yin-yang 29

Zheng qi 20